

**PROPOSED AGGREGATE / GRAVEL MINE ON A  
PORTION OF PORTION 4 OF THE FARM WAAI KRAAL  
120, REGISTRATION DIVISION OF BEAUFORT WEST,  
WESTERN CAPE PROVINCE**

**DRAFT BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT**



**APRIL 2026**

***REFERENCE NUMBER: WC 30/5/1/3/2/10386 MP***

**PREPARED FOR:**

Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd  
PO BOX 4288 George East  
6529  
Boeteka  
Beaufort West  
6970  
Tel: 023-4152654  
E-mail: appieviviers@gmail.com

**PREPARED BY:**

Greenmined Environmental  
Unit MO1, Office No 37  
AECI Site, Baker Square  
Paardevlei  
De Beers Avenue  
Somerset West  
7130  
Tel: 021 851 2673  
Cell: 072 759 9059  
Fax: 086 546 0579  
E -mail:  
zoe@greenmined.co.za



## **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd, applied for environmental authorisation (EA) and a mining permit to mine aggregate / gravel over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities, on a portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West, Western Cape province. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; the material will then be loaded and hauled to the crushing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles. The aggregate will be stockpiled until it is transported from site using tipper trucks. All mining related activities will be contained within the approved mining permit boundaries.

The proposed mining area is approximately 4.9 ha in extent and the applicant, intends to win material from the area for at least 2 years with a possible extension of another 3 years. The aggregate to be removed from the quarry will be used for the construction industry in the vicinity. The proposed quarry will therefore contribute to the upgrading / maintenance of road infrastructure and building contracts in and around the Beaufort West area.

The proposed project triggers listed activities in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998) and the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations 2014 (as amended 2017) and therefore requires an environmental impact assessment (basic assessment process) that assess project specific environmental impacts and alternatives, consider public input, and propose mitigation measures, to ultimately culminate in an environmental management programme that informs the competent authority (Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources) when considering the environmental authorisation. This report, the Draft Basic Assessment Report, forms part of the departmental requirements, and presents the first report of the EIA process.

### **Site Alternative 1 (Preferred and Only Site Alternative):**

Site Alternative 1 (S1) (Preferred Alternative and only site alternative): The Applicant, applied for a mining permit for the mining of aggregate / gravel, 4.9 ha on a portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal No 120 situated in the Beaufort West magisterial district of the Western Cape Province. The proposed mining footprint will be 4.9 ha and will be developed over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the landowner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not result in the loss of high-potential agricultural land for the landowner. This site was identified as the only viable alternative, as its low agricultural potential makes it the most suitable option for development.

### **Site Alternative 2:**

Site Alternative 2 (S2) was assessed for the proposed mining but found not environmentally and practically suitable. The earmarked area is also a greenfield site that will have a higher visual impact to be disturbed for the quarry to be established. Site alternative 1, was deemed the only site alternative as this is the only area that will be viable for the landowner due to the low agricultural potential.

The proposed area was identified as the preferred option due to existing disturbances and the location of the aggregate reserve, which lies within the earmarked footprint. Additionally, the site has low agricultural production potential

An alternative layout for the sand mine, has been assessed in the pre application phase – Site Alternative 2 but not found viable as explained below.

### **Site Alternative 2:**

Site alternative 1, was deemed the only viable site alternative as this is the only area that will be viable for the applicant due to the presence of the aggregate ridge. Although the position of Site Alternative 2 will still allow the development of the mine on the property, it is believed that the impact associated with this site alternative is of higher significance without the need or motivation justifying it.

### **Public Participation Process:**

During the initial public participation process the relevant stakeholders and I&AP's will be informed of the project by means of an advertisement in Oudtshoorn Courant on 09 April 2026, and two on-site notices will be placed at visible locations, one on the farm boundary fence at the entrance, and another at the at the Beaufort West Municipality.

A 30-day commenting period will be allowed from 13 April 2026 and expires on 15 May 2026. In accordance with the timeframes stipulated in the EIA Regulations, as amended, the Draft Basic Assessment Report was compiled and distributed for comment and perusal to the I&AP's and stakeholders. The comments received on the DBAR will be incorporated into the Final Basic Assessment Report (FBAR) to be submitted for decision making to DMPR.

### **Basic Assessment Report:**

The basic assessment report identifies the potential positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity will have on the environment and the community as well as the aspects that may impact on the socio-economic conditions of directly affected persons, and proposes possible mitigation measure that could be applied to modify / remedy / control / stop the identified impacts.

The key finding of the environmental impact assessment entail the following:

### **Topography:**

The natural topography the proposed excavated area can be described extremely irregular to slightly undulating plains covered with dwarf spiny shrubland dominated by Karoo dwarf shrubs (e.g. *Chrysocoma ciliata*, *Eriocephalus ericoides*) with rare low trees (e.g. *Euclea undu-Jata*). Dense stands of drought-resistant grasses (*Stipagrostis*, *Aristida*) cover (especially after abundant rains) broad sandy bottom lands. The elevation loss from the proposed mining footprint to the town of Beaufort West to be 146 m over 29.5 km.

### **Visual Characteristics:**

The viewshed analysis showed that the visual impact of the proposed gravel mining operation will be of low significance due to the already existing mining activities. The small scale of the proposed operation, and the mining area will be located between two hills in order to minimize the visual impact. Should the Applicant successfully rehabilitate the mining area (upon closure), no residual visual impact is expected upon closure of the mine.

### **Air and Noise Quality:**

The proposed activity will contribute the emissions mechanical mining equipment to the receiving environment for the duration of the operational phase. Should the permit holder implement the mitigation measures proposed in this document and the EMPR the impact on the air quality of the surrounding environment is deemed to be of low significance and compatible with the current land use. The potential impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the traffic of the surrounding area.

### **Geology and Soil:**

The geology of the study area comprises mostly primitive, skeletal soils in rocky areas developing over sedimentary rocks such as mudstones and arenites of the Adelaide Subgroup of the Karoo Supergroup and to a lesser extent also the Ecca Group (Waterford and Volksrust Formations) as well as Jurassic dolerite sills and dykes and subsummit positions of mesas and butts with dolerite boulder slopes. Almost entirely lb land type.

Mudstones and sandstones of the Beaufort Group (Adelaide Subgroup) with some Ecca (Fort Brown Formation) shales supporting very shallow and stony soils of the Glenrosa and/or Mispah forms, typical of Fe land type.

### **Hydrology:**

The proposed project does not require a Water Use Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998). No activity will take place in or within 1km radius of any water bodies. Any water required for the implementation of the project will be bought from a registered source and transported to on site.

#### **Mining, Biodiversity and Groundcover:**

Ground-truthing showed that the proposed footprint of the mining area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. The proposed area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. The Applicant will make use of the existing access roads to the mining area. Should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures proposed in the EMP the impact of the proposed activity on the vegetation and groundcover in general is deemed to be of low significance.

#### **Fauna:**

Various small mammals and reptiles occur are likely to on the property. The fauna at the site will not be impacted by the proposed mining activities as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. Workers should be educated and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. At this stage no resident protected or red data faunal species could be identified within the earmarked footprint. The study area falls over a property that is noted to be an operational game farm, should this mining permit be granted farm owner will be consulted prior to commencement of any activities to ensure that safety of animals and workers. Workers will be informed and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. No poaching or hunting of animals will be allowed. All construction vehicles must adhere to a low-speed limit (20 km/h on haul roads and 40 km/h on access roads is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises. Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.

#### **Cultural and Heritage Environment:**

The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil

Finds Protocol will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.

#### **Site Specific Infrastructure:**

There is only an existing quarry directly adjacent to the eastern boundary of the site. The following is located within close proximity:

- An existing SANRAL quarry is located 900m southeast of the site.
- Guest lodge on the farm is located 2km south of the site
- The N1 – 2.5km towards the south of the site.

None of the above falls within 500m of the site area and will therefore not be affected.

During the environmental impact assessment process, the feasibility of the proposed site was assessed to identify fatal flaws that are deemed as severe as to prevent the activity continuing or warrant a site or project alternative. The outcome of the assessment showed that should the mitigation measures and monitoring programmes proposed in this document be implemented, no fatal flaws could be identified that prevents the activity continuing.

#### **Environmental Management Programme (EMPR)**

The EMPR provides a description of the impact management outcomes and closure objectives. It presents the impacts to be mitigated in their respective phases as well as stipulates the mitigation measures to be applied on site.

The financial provision amount that will be necessary for the rehabilitation of damages caused by the operation, both sudden closures during the normal operation of the project and at final, planned closure gives a sum total of R 250 941,18.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

BID	Background Information Document
BGIS	Biodiversity GIS
CARA	Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983)
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area
DBAR	Draft Basic Assessment Report
DEDEAT	Department of Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
DMPR	Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources
DoT	Department of Transport
DWS	Department of Water and Sanitation
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EIA Regulations	Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended 2017)
EISC	Ecological Importance and Sensitivity Category
EMPR	Environmental Management Programme
FBAR	Final Basic Assessment Report
FEL	Front-end-loader
FSBP	Western Cape Biodiversity Plan
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GNR	Government Notice
I&AP's	Interested and Affected Parties
MHSA	Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No. 29 of 1996)
MP	Mining Permit
MPRDA	Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act No. 28 of 2002)
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEM:AQA	National Environmental Management: Air Quality Control Act, 2004 (Act No. 39 of 2004)
NEM:BA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NEM:WA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)
NFEPA	National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas
NHRA	National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No 25 of 1999)
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act No. 93 of 1996)

NWA	National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998)
PCB's	Polychlorinated Biphenyl
PCO	Pest Control Officer
PPE	Personal Protective Equipment
PSM	Palaeontological Sensitivity Map
RA	Risk Assessment
REC	Recommended Ecological Category
S1	Site Alternative 1
SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRIS	South African Heritage Resources Information System
SAMBF	South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum
USBM	US Bureau of Mines
WMA	Water Management Area
WULA	Water Use Licence Application

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART A .....	16
SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT .....	16
1. CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS .....	16
a) Details of: Greenmined Environmental .....	16
i) Details of the EAP .....	16
ii) Expertise of the EAP. ....	16
b) Location of the overall Activity. ....	17
c) Locality map.....	18
Description of the scope of the proposed overall activity.....	18
i) Listed and specified activities.....	19
ii) Description of the activities to be undertaken .....	20
d) Policy and Legislative Context.....	30
e) Need and desirability of the proposed activities.....	32
f) Motivation for the overall preferred site, activities and technology alternative. ....	45
g) Full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred alternatives within the site. ....	45
i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered. ....	45
ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed.....	47
iii) Summary of issues raised by I&APs .....	50
iv) The Environmental attributes associated with the alternatives.....	55
(1) Baseline Environment.....	55
(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity.....	55
(b) Description of the current land uses .....	69
(c) Description of specific environmental features and infrastructure on the site. ....	70
(d) Environmental and current land use map. ....	77
v) Impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts.....	77
vi) Methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks; .....	84
vii) The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity (in terms of the initial site layout) and alternatives will have on the environment and the community that may be affected. ....	90
viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and the level of risk .....	92
ix) Motivation where no alternative sites were considered. ....	103
x) Statement motivating the alternative development location within the overall site. ....	104
h) Full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts and risks the activity will impose on the preferred site (In respect of the final site layout plan) through the life of the activity. ....	106
i) Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk .....	114
j) Summary of specialist reports.....	118
k) Environmental impact statement.....	123
i) Summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment; .....	123
ii) Final Site Map.....	126
iii) Summary of the positive and negative impacts and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives; 126	
l) Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMP; 128	

m)	Aspects for inclusion as conditions of Authorisation.....	145
n)	Description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge.....	145
o)	Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should or should not be authorised.....	145
i)	Reasons why the activity should be authorised or not.....	145
ii)	Conditions that must be included in the authorisation.....	145
p)	Period for which the Environmental Authorisation is required.....	145
q)	Undertaking.....	145
r)	Financial Provision.....	146
i)	Explain how the aforesaid amount was derived.....	146
ii)	Confirm that this amount can be provided from operating expenditure.....	146
s)	Specific Information required by the competent Authority.....	146
i)	Compliance with the provisions of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) read with section 24 (3)(a) and (7) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998). The EIA report must include the: -.....	146
(1)	Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person.....	146
(2)	Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act. ....	147
t)	Other matters required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act.....	148
	PART B.....	149
	ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT.....	149
1.	DRAFT ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME.....	149
a)	Details of the EAP,.....	149
b)	Description of the Aspects of the Activity.....	149
c)	Composite Map.....	149
d)	Description of impact management objectives including management statements.....	149
i)	Determination of closure objectives.....	149
ii)	Volume and rate of water use required for the operation.....	151
iii)	Has a water use licence has been applied for?.....	153
iv)	Impacts to be mitigated in their respective phases.....	154
e)	Impact Management Outcomes.....	172
f)	Impact Management Actions.....	176
i)	Financial Provision.....	188
(1)	Determination of the amount of Financial Provision.....	188
(a)	Describe the closure objectives and the extent to which they have been aligned to the baseline environment described under the Regulation.....	188
(b)	Confirm specifically that the environmental objectives in relation to closure have been consulted with landowner and interested and affected parties.....	188
(c)	Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure.....	188
(d)	Explain why it can be confirmed that the rehabilitation plan is compatible with the closure objectives. 188	
(e)	Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline.....	191
(f)	Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined.....	196
	Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon, including.....	197
g)	Monitoring of Impact Management Actions.....	197
h)	Monitoring and reporting frequency.....	197

i) Responsible persons .....	197
j) Time period for implementing impact management actions .....	197
k) Mechanisms for monitoring compliance .....	197
l) Indicate the frequency of the submission of the performance assessment/environmental audit report. ....	208
m) Environmental Awareness Plan .....	208
i) Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work.....	208
ii) Manner in which risk will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment. ..	208
n) Specific information required by the Competent Authority .....	210
2. UNDERTAKING .....	211

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1: Satellite view of the proposed mining permit area (green polygon) of Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd (image obtained from Google Earth).....	18
Figure 2: Satellite view showing the access road (white arrow) to the proposed mining area (green polygon).....	24
Figure 4: Satellite view showing the position of Site Alternative 1 (green polygon) within the surrounding landscape.....	46
Figure 5: Statistical representation of the temperatures for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <a href="http://www.worldweatheronline.com">http://www.worldweatheronline.com</a> ).....	55
Figure 6: Statistical representation of the precipitation for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <a href="https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx">https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx</a> ).....	56
Figure 7: Statistical representation of the wind speed for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <a href="https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx">https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx</a> ).....	56
Figure 8: Image showing the dominant wind direction (first panel) and average wind speed over a 12 month period for the Beaufort West area (image obtained from <a href="https://www.windfinder.com/windstatistics/beaufort_west">https://www.windfinder.com/windstatistics/beaufort_west</a> ).....	57
Figure 9: Elevation profile showing the topography between the proposed mining footprint (white line) and the town of Beaufort West. (Image obtained from Google Earth). ....	57
Figure 10: Indication of the simplified geology of the study area, where green represents the Beaufort Group. The proposed mining area is indicated by the red star. (Image obtained from the Council for Geoscience).....	59
Figure 11: Map showing the proposed mining footprint (purple polygon). (Image obtained from the BGIS Map Viewer – 2017 Strategic Water Source Areas).....	60
Figure 12: The Mining and Biodiversity importance map with the proposed mining footprint indicated by the green polygon. Light brown – moderate biodiversity importance, moderate risk for mining, light brown – moderate biodiversity Importance, moderate risk for mining (image obtained from the BGIS Map Viewer – Mining Guidelines). ....	61
Figure 13: Western Cape Biodiversity Conservation Plan showing the mining area (Green polygon) in relation to the ONA (Image obtained from BGIS Map Viewer – Western Cape Conservation Plan).....	62
Figure 14: National vegetation cover map showing the mining area within the Beaufort West Gamka Karoo (NKI 1) (light brown) Upper Karoo Hardeveld (NKu 2) (dark brown). (Image obtained from BGIS Map Viewer – National Vegetation Map). ....	63
Figure 15: Screenshot from the SAHRIS palaeo-sensitivity map showing the location of the proposed mining area (orange polygon) straddling an area of high (red) and insignificant/zero (no colour) palaeontological sensitivity (Source: <a href="https://sahris.sahra.org.za/map/palaeo">https://sahris.sahra.org.za/map/palaeo</a> ). ....	65
Figure 16: Gender distribution (Information extracted from the Beaufort West Municipality Integrated Development Plan – 2022/2027) - Source: Statistics South Africa: Community Survey, 2016.....	66
Figure 17: Income levels (Information extracted from the Beaufort West Municipality Integrated Development Plan – 2022/27) - Source: Statistics South Africa: Census 2001 - 2011.....	67
Figure 18: Elevation profile of the proposed mining footprint (Image obtained from Google Earth). ....	70
Figure 19: Viewshed of the proposed mining footprint where the green shaded areas shows the positions from where the mining area will be visible. (Image obtained from Google Earth).....	71
Figure 20: Satellite view showing 1km radius from the position of mining footprint. (Image obtained from Google Earth)..	73

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1: Location of the proposed project. ....	17
Table 2: Listed and specified activities triggered by the associated mining activities .....	20
Table 3: GPS Coordinates of the proposed mining footprint. ....	21
Table 4: Policy and Legislative Context.....	30
Table 5: Need and desirability determination. ....	34
Table 6: GPS Coordinates of Site Alternative 1 (preferred and only site alternative) .....	46

Table 7: List of the I&AP's and stakeholders that were notified of the proposed aggregate / gravel mine project .....	48
Table 8: Summary of issues raised by IAPs .....	50
Table 9: Aquatic characteristics of the greater study area .....	59
Table 10: Land uses and/or prominent features that occur within 500 m radius .....	69
Table 11: Chance Find Procedure.....	76
Table 12: Table to be used to obtain an overall rating of severity, taking into consideration the various criteria.....	86
Table 13: Criteria for the rating of duration.....	86
Table 14: Criteria for the rating of extent / spatial scale.....	87
Table 15: Example of calculating overall consequence.....	87
Table 16: Criteria for the rating of frequency.....	87
Table 17: Criteria for the rating of probability.....	87
Table 18: Example of calculating overall likelihood.....	89
Table 19: Determination of overall environmental significance.....	89
Table 20: Description of environmental significance and related action required.....	89
Table 21: Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk.....	114
Table 22: Summary of specialist reports .....	118
Table 23: Potential negative impacts with a low-medium or higher significance/risk.....	126
Table 24: Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMPR ..	128
Table 25: Impact to be mitigated in their respective phases.....	154
Table 26: Impact Management Outcomes .....	172
Table 27: Impact Management Actions .....	176
Table 28: Calculation of closure cost.....	194
Table 29: Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the EMPR and reporting thereon.....	197

## LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix A	Regulation 2.2 Mine Plan
Appendix B	Locality Map
Appendix C	Site Activities Map
Appendix D	Surrounding Land Use Map
Appendix E	Rehabilitation Plan
Appendix F	Proof of Public Participation
Appendix G	Supporting Impact Assessment
Appendix H	Financial and Technical Ability
Appendix I	Invasive Plant Species Management Plan
Appendix J	Photographs of the site
Appendix K	CV and Experience Record of EAP
Appendix L	Closure / Rehabilitation Plan
Appendix M	Palaeontological Heritage Comment
Appendix N	Screening Report
Appendix O	Site Sensitivity Report



**mineral resources**

Department:  
Mineral Resources  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT**  
**And**  
**ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT**

SUBMITTED FOR ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORIZATION IN TERMS OF THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL ACT, 1998 AND THE NATIONAL ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT WASTE ACT, 2008 IN RESPECT OF LISTED ACTIVITIES THAT HAVE BEEN TRIGGERED BY APPLICATIONS IN TERMS OF THE MINERAL AND PETROLEUM RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT ACT, 2002 (MPRDA) (AS AMENDED).

<b>NAME OF APPLICANT:</b>	Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd
<b>TEL NO:</b>	Tel: 023-4152654
<b>FAX NO:</b>	N/A
<b>POSTAL ADDRESS:</b>	PO BOX 4288 George East,6529
<b>PHYSICAL ADDRESS:</b>	Boeteka Farm Beaufort West,
<b>FILE REFERENCE NUMBER SAMRAD:</b>	<b>WC 30/5/1/3/2/10386 MP</b>

## IMPORTANT NOTICE

In terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 29 of 2002) as amended), the Minister must grant a prospecting or mining right if among others the mining “will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment”.

Unless an Environmental Authorisation can be granted following the evaluation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Programme report in terms of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998) (NEMA), it can be concluded that the said activities will not result in unacceptable pollution, ecological degradation or damage to the environment.

In terms of section 16(3)(b) of the EIA Regulations, 2014, any report submitted as part of an application must be prepared in a format that may be determined by the Competent Authority and in terms of section 17(1)(c) the competent Authority must check whether the application has taken into account any minimum requirements applicable or instructions or guidance provided by the competent authority to the submission of applications.

**It is therefore an instruction that** the prescribed reports required in respect of applications for an environmental authorisation for listed activities triggered by an application for a right or a permit are submitted in the exact format of, and provide all the information required in terms of, this template. Furthermore, please be advised that failure to submit the information required in the format provided in this template will be regarded as a failure to meet the requirements of the Regulation and will lead to the Environmental Authorisation being refused.

**It is furthermore an instruction that** the Environmental Assessment Practitioner must process and interpret his/her research and analysis and use the findings thereof to compile the information required herein. (Unprocessed supporting information may be attached as appendices). The EAP must ensure that the information required is placed correctly in the relevant sections of the Report, in the order, and under the provided headings as set out below, and ensure that the report is not cluttered with un-interpreted information and that it unambiguously represents the interpretation of the applicant.

## OBJECTIVE OF THE BASIC ASSESSMENT PROCESS

The objective of the basic assessment process is to, through a consultative process–

- (a) determine the policy and legislative context within which the proposed activity is located and how the activity complies with and responds to the policy and legislative context;
- (b) identify the alternatives considered, including the activity, location, and technology alternatives;
- (c) describe the need and desirability of the proposed alternatives,
- (d) through the undertaking of an impact and risk assessment process inclusive of cumulative impacts which focused on determining the geographical, physical, biological, social, economic, heritage, and cultural sensitivity of the sites and locations within sites and the risk of impact of the proposed activity and technology alternatives on these aspects to determine:
  - (i) the nature, signification, consequence, extent, duration, and probability of the impacts occurring to; and
  - (ii) the degree to which these impacts –
    - (aa) can be reversed;
    - (bb) may cause irreplaceable loss of resources; and
    - (cc) can be managed, avoided or mitigated;
- (e) through a ranking of the site sensitivities and possible impacts the activity and technology alternatives will impose on the sites and location identified through the life of the activity to –
  - (i) identify and motivate a preferred site, activity and technology alternative;
  - (ii) identify suitable measures to manage, avoid or mitigate identified impacts; and
  - (iii) identify residual risks that need to be managed and monitored.

## PART A

### SCOPE OF ASSESSMENT AND BASIC ASSESSMENT REPORT

#### 1. CONTACT PERSON AND CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

##### a) Details of: Greenmined Environmental

In terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA) the proponent must appoint an independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) to undertake the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) of any activities regulated in terms of the aforementioned Act. Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd appointed Greenmined Environmental to undertake the study needed. Greenmined Environmental has no vested interest in Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd or the proposed project and declares its independence as required by the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended April 2017) (EIA Regulations).

##### i) Details of the EAP

###### Prepared by:

Name of the Practitioner: Ms Zoë Norval (Environmental Specialist)

Tel No.: 021 851 2673

Fax No.: 086 546 0579

E-mail address: [zoe@greenmined.co.za](mailto:zoe@greenmined.co.za)

###### Reviewed by:

Name of the Practitioner: Mrs Sonette Smit (Environmental Specialist)

Tel No.: 021 851 2673

Fax No.: 086 546 0579

E-mail address: [sonette.s@greenmined.co.za](mailto:sonette.s@greenmined.co.za)

##### ii) Expertise of the EAP.

###### (1) **The qualifications of the EAP** (with evidence).

Mrs. S Smit has sixteen years of experience in environmental legal compliance audits, (GIS) geographic information system, mining right and permit applications and applications for environmental authorisations & Water use applications.

Ms Z. Norval has a Bsc degree in Environmental Science and an Honours degree in Botany. In her Honours year, she focused mainly on environmental assessments and geographic information systems.

Please find CV's of both EAP's attached in Appendix K.

(2) **Summary of the EAP's past experience**  
(In carrying out the Environmental Impact Assessment Procedure)

Sonette Smit is an Environmental Consultant with 16 years' experience in the environmental sector. She specialized the last 8 years in the mining sector where she conducted the mining related report and programs. She has also been involved in a number of other environmental and water use application projects where she compiled environmental management plans, environmental impact assessments, environmental audits, IWULA's/IWWMP's.

Zoë Norval is a Junior Environmental Consultant with five years of experience in environmental services, Environmental Control and Environmental Performance Assessments / Compliance Audits, preparation of environmental related documentation, Mining Right and Permit applications and applications for Environmental Authorisations.

**b) Location of the overall Activity.**

*Table 1: Location of the proposed project.*

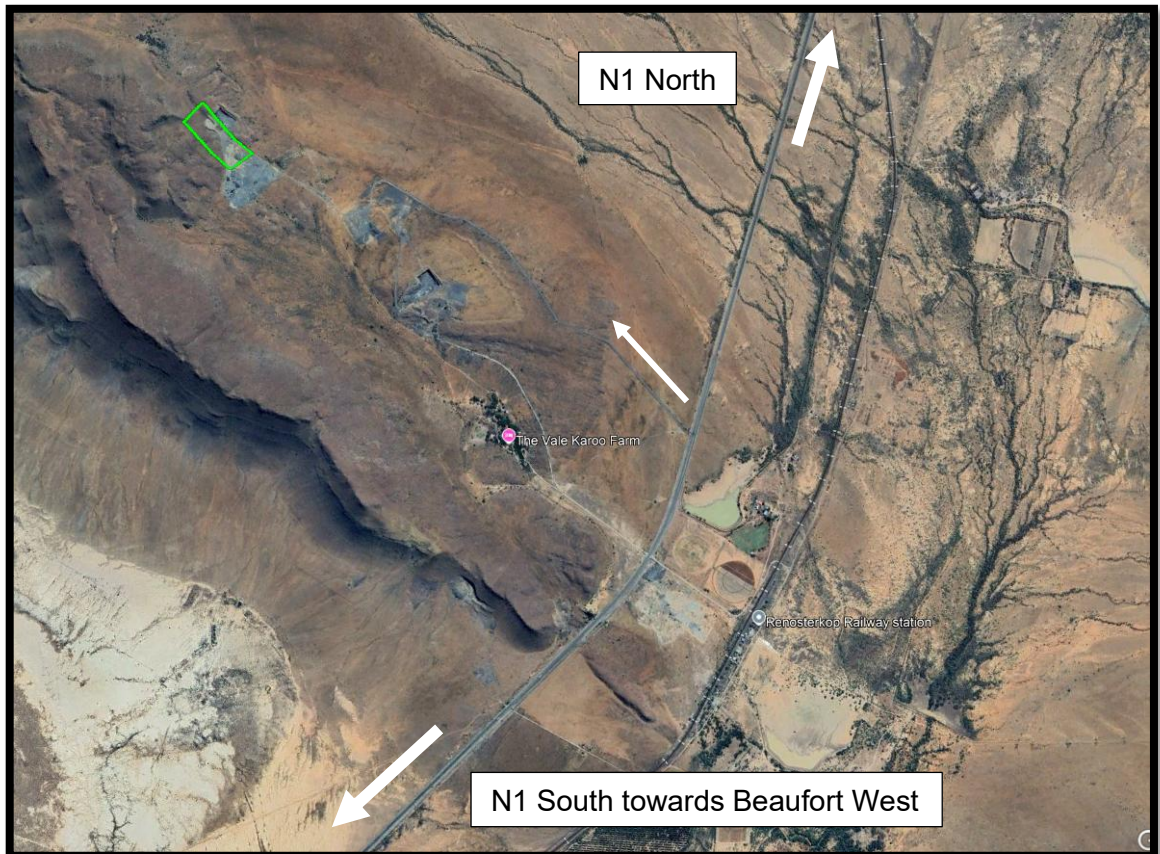
<b>Farm Name:</b>	A portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West, Western Cape province
<b>Application area (Ha)</b>	4.9 ha
<b>Magisterial district:</b>	Beaufort West
<b>Distance and direction from the nearest town</b>	±32 km north of Beaufort West of the N1  Travelling north from Beaufort West toward Three Sisters, the site is located just off the N1 at road marker N1-8 (32.0N)

<b>21 digit Surveyor General Code for each farm portion</b>	C00900000000012000004
---	-----------------------

**c) Locality map**

(show nearest town, scale not smaller than 1:250000).

The requested map is attached as Appendix B.



*Figure 1: Satellite view of the proposed mining permit area (green polygon) of Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd (image obtained from Google Earth).*

**Description of the scope of the proposed overall activity.**

Provide a plan drawn to a scale acceptable to the competent authority but not less than 1:10 000 that shows the location, and area (hectares) of all aforesaid main and listed activities, and infrastructure to be placed on site

Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd (hereinafter referred to as “the Applicant”), applied for environmental authorisation (EA) and a mining permit to mine gravel on a portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West, Western Cape province.

The proposed mining footprint will be 4.9 ha and will be developed over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities. The mining method will make use

of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; the material will then be loaded and hauled to the crushing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles. The aggregate will be stockpiled until it is transported from site using tipper trucks. All mining related activities will be contained within the approved mining permit boundaries.

The proposed mining area is approximately 4.9 ha in extent and the applicant, intends to win material from the area for at least 2 years with a possible extension of another 3 years. The gravel to be removed from the quarry will be used for construction industry in the vicinity. The proposed quarry will therefore contribute to the upgrading / maintenance of road infrastructure and building contracts in and around the Beaufort West area.

The mining activities will consist out of the following:

- Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil;
- Blasting
- Excavating;
- Crushing;
- Stockpiling and transporting;
- Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the site; and
- Replacing the topsoil and vegetation the disturbed area.

The mining site will contain the following:

- Excavating equipment;
- Earth moving equipment;
- Mobile crushing and screening plants;
- Access Roads;
- Site office (Container);
- Site vehicles;
- Parking area for visitors and site vehicles;
- Weighbridge;
- Ablution facilities (Chemical toilet).

See attached as Appendix C a copy of the site activities map for the proposed project.

**i) Listed and specified activities**

Table 2: Listed and specified activities triggered by the associated mining activities

<b>NAME OF ACTIVITY</b> (E.g. For prospecting – drill site, site camp, ablution facilities, accommodation, equipment storage, sample storage, site office, access route etc... etc... etc  E.g. for mining – excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.)	<b>Aerial extent of the activity</b> Ha or m <sup>2</sup>	<b>LISTED ACTIVITY</b> Mark with an X where applicable or affected	<b>APPLICABLE LISTING NOTICE</b> (GNR 324, GNR 325, GNR 326 OR GNR 327)
Demarcation of site with visible beacons.	4.9 ha	N/A	Not listed
Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil.	±0.9 ha	X	GNR 983 Listing Notice 1 Activity 21 (as amended)
Loading and hauling of the sand from the mining footprint.	±0.9 ha	X	
Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.	±0.9 ha	X	
Replacing the topsoil and vegetating the disturbed area.	±0.9 ha	X	
GNR 983 Listing Notice 1 Activity 21:  <i>Any activity including the operation of that activity which requires a mining permit in terms of section 27 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, as well as any other applicable activity as contained in this Listing Notice or in Listing Notice 3 of 2014, required to exercise the mining permit.</i>			

**ii) Description of the activities to be undertaken**

(Describe Methodology or technology to be employed, including the type of commodity to the prospected/mined and for a linear activity, a description of the rout of the activity)

A portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West RD, Western Cape province is situated approximately ±32 km north of Beaufort West. The GPS coordinates of the proposed mining area are as follows:

Table 3: GPS Coordinates of the proposed mining footprint.

NUMBER	DEGREES, MINUTES, SECONDS		DECIMAL DEGREES	
	LAT (S)	LONG (E)	LAT (S)	LONG (E)
A	32°10'52.586"	22°49'43.979"	-32.181274	22.828883
B	32°10'57.184"	22°49'47.251"	-32.182551	22.829792
C	32°10'59.779"	22°49'49.184"	-32.183272	22.830329
D	32°11'2.569"	22°49'52.172"	-32.184047	22.831159
E	32°11'4.654"	22°49'47.345"	-32.184626	22.829818
F	32°11'1.331"	22°49'44.166"	-32.183703	22.828935
G	32°10'55.358"	22°49'39.659"	-32.182044	22.827683

**Project Proposal:**

The proposed mining site will be over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities on a portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West, Western Cape province. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; the material will then be loaded and hauled to the crushing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles. The aggregate will be stockpiled until it is transported from site using tipper trucks. All mining related activities will be contained within the approved mining permit boundaries.

The proposed mining area is approximately 4.9 ha in extent and the applicant, intends to win material from the area for at least 2 years with a possible extension of another 3 years. The gravel to be removed from the quarry will be used for construction industry in the vicinity. The proposed quarry will therefore contribute to the upgrading / maintenance of road infrastructure and building contracts in and around the Beaufort West area.

The mining activities will consist out of the following:

- Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil;
- Excavating;
- Crushing;
- Stockpiling and transporting;
- Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the site; and
- Replacing the topsoil and vegetation the disturbed area.

The proposed mining activities will entail the following:

- An existing access road to the mining area will be used.
- The proposed mining site will be over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities.

- The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; the material will then be loaded and hauled to the crushing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles. The aggregate will be stockpiled until it is transported from site using tipper trucks. All mining related activities will be contained within the approved mining permit boundaries. The aggregate / gravel will be stockpiled and transported to clients via trucks and trailers.
- All activities will be contained within the boundaries of the site.

Should the MP be issued and the mining of gravel be allowed, the proposed project will comprise of activities that can be divided into three key phases (discussed in more detail below) namely the:

- (1) Site establishment/construction phase which will involve the demarcation of the permitted mining area. Site establishment will also necessitate the clearing of vegetation, the stripping and stockpiling of topsoil, and the introduction of mining machinery and equipment.*
- (2) Operational phase that will entail the mining of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel from the approved footprint area via conventional open cast mining methods. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; upon which the loosened material will be transported to the crushing and screening processing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles, before it is sold and transported from site to clients.*
- (3) Decommissioning phase which entails the rehabilitation of the affected environment prior to the submission of a closure application to the Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources (DMPR). The permit holder will further be responsible for the seeding of all rehabilitated areas. Once the full mining area is rehabilitated, the mining permit holder will be required to submit a closure application to the DMPR in accordance with section 43(4) of the MPRDA, 2002. The Closure Application will be submitted in terms of Regulation 62 of the MPRDA, 2002, and Government Notice 940 of NEMA, 1998 (as amended).*

## **PHASES OF THE PROJECT**

1. *Site Establishment Phase:*

Site establishment entails the demarcation of the mining boundaries, clearance of vegetation and stripping and stockpiling of topsoil (if needed) from the mining area, and the introduction of the mining equipment as detailed below:

📌 **Demarcation of Mining Boundaries:**

Pursuant to receipt of an Environmental Authorisation (EA) and Mining Permit (MP), and prior to site establishment, the boundaries of the mining area will be demarcated with visible beacons.

📌 **Access Road:**

The farm road has a formal entrance, and was also used by SANRAL to transport aggregate / gravel from an existing quarry. No upgrading of the road is needed prior to commencement. An agreement with SANRAL will be obtained in order to use this access road.

The proposed mining area will be reached via an existing farm road that passes the site. The applicant proposes to upgrade the road to allow comfortable movement of mining related equipment and vehicles. Haul roads into the excavation will be extended as mining progresses. The improvement of the access road, and establishment of haul roads will be below the threshold of the NEMA, 1998 EIA Regulations, 2017.



*Figure 2: Satellite view showing the access road (white arrow) to the proposed mining area (green polygon).*

#### ■ **Clearing of Vegetation:**

According to Mucina and Rutherford (2012) the expansion area extends over two vegetation types known as the NKI 1 Gamka Karoo and the NKu 2 Upper Karoo Hardeveld. Both is classified as Least Threatened. According to the Western Cape Biodiversity Conservation Plan (WCBCP) – the area is classified as Other National Area (ONA). To mitigate this, the clearing of vegetation must be contained to the approved mining footprint, and no vegetation/bush clearance, outside the approved area, may be allowed.

#### ■ **Topsoil Stripping:**

It is proposed that topsoil removal will be restricted to the exact footprint of areas required during the operational phase of the activity. The topsoil will be stockpiled at a designated signposted area within the mining boundary to be replaced during the rehabilitation of the area. It will be part of the obligations of site management to prevent the mixing of topsoil heaps with overburden/other soil heaps. The complete A-horizon (the top 100 – 200 mm of soil which is generally darker coloured due to high organic matter content) will be removed. If it is unclear where the topsoil layer ends the top 300 mm of

soil will be stripped. The topsoil berm will measure a maximum of 1.5 m in height in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.

➤ **Introduction of Mining Machinery:**

The mining site will contain the following:

- Excavating equipment;
- Earth moving equipment;
- Mobile crushing and screening plants;
- Site office (Container);
- Site vehicles;
- Parking area for visitors and site vehicles;
- Weighbridge;
- Ablution facilities (Chemical toilet).

2. *Operational Phase:*

The operational phase will involve the loosening of the hard rock of the quarry by blasting, upon which it will be mechanically recovered with drilling-, excavating- and earthmoving equipment. The rock will then be delivered to the crushing and screening plant where it will be reduced to various sized aggregate. The screened material will be delivered to various size category stockpiles. Transportation of the final product will be from the stockpile area to the end point by means of trucks. The contractor will make use of permanent employees and any additional employees required will be sourced from the surrounding area and daily be transported to site.. All activities will be contained within the boundaries of the site. The mining activities will consist out of the following:

- Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil;
- Drilling and blasting
- Excavating;
- Crushing and screening;
- Stockpiling and transporting;
- Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the site; and
- Replacing the topsoil and vegetation the disturbed area.

➤ Water Use:

As no gravel washing is proposed for this project, the Applicant will exclusively use water for dust suppression purposes on the access road and processing plant when needed. Approximately 5 - 10 000 litre water/day will be needed during the dry months.

Dust generated on the access road will, as far as possible, be managed through alternative dust suppression methods to restrict water use to the absolute minimum.

These measures will include a combination of the following:

- The speed of all mining equipment/vehicles will be restricted to 40 km/h on the internal farm road to minimize dust generation;
- When the truck leaves the mining area it will be covered (e.g. shade cloth material) to minimise windblown dust from the loads;
- The Applicant will attempt to lessen denuded areas (dust source) to the absolute minimum.

Under very windy/dusty conditions the permit holder might have to substitute the above-mentioned dust suppression methods with the spraying of water, in which case water will be bought and transported to the mining area in a water truck that will moisten the problem area. The water truck driver will receive proper training to ensure effective use of the water on problem areas preventing water wastage.

■ Electricity:

The proposed project will make use of generators for power supply.

■ Waste Handling:

Solid (general) waste, generated during the operational phase, will be contained in sealable refuse bins that will be placed at the office area until the waste is transported to a recognised general waste landfill site. A recognized contractor will service the chemical toilets that will serve as ablution facilities to the employees.

Due to the nature of the project, the small scale of the proposed operation, and the fact that no permanent infrastructure will be established, very little to no general waste will be generated as a direct result of the mining activities. Any waste generated during the operational phase, will be contained in a

sealable refuse bin that will be removed from site and incorporated in an approved waste disposal system of the contractor.

Likewise, very little (if any) generation of hazardous waste is expected. Hazardous waste will mainly be the result of accidental spillages or breakdowns. Such contaminated areas will be cleaned up immediately (within two hours of the occurrence) and contaminated soil will be contained in designated hazardous waste containers to be removed daily to the hazardous waste storage area at a designated off-site workshop where it will be disposed of as part of the hazardous waste by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor.

The chemical toilet, to be placed on site, will be serviced by a registered contractor.

■ Servicing and Maintenance:

A temporary workshop and wash bay will be established on site where minor servicing and emergency repairs of mining related equipment/machinery will take place. The wash bay will have an impermeable floor and drain into an oil sump that will be serviced by a qualified contractor. No wash water will be allowed to drain into the surrounding environment. No bulk storing of fuel (>30 000 l) will take place on site, and any chemicals needed at the workshop will be stored in accordance with the product specific safety data sheet specifications in temporary containers/secured cages.

Regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services may only take place in a demarcated service area. If emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop / service area, drip trays must be present. All waste products must be disposed of in a 200 litre closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal.

***Decommissioning Phase:***

Rehabilitation will be implemented progressively throughout the operational phase, with final rehabilitation undertaken once mining activities have ceased. The objective is to achieve a stable, non-polluting landform that is compatible with the surrounding environment and suitable for continued low-intensity grazing. Due to the impracticality

of importing large volumes of fill to restore the quarry area to its original topography, the rehabilitation option is to develop the quarry into a minor landscape feature. The proposed quarrying and rehabilitation procedures was formulated to optimise the extraction of the raw material while creating stable quarry sides that will not present an unreasonable safety risk once the mine was closed. Mining operations will be conducted in stages, corresponding to the creation of precision blasted quarry sides and benches towards the base of the working. The decommissioning phase and closure of the quarry will in addition to precision blasted quarry faces involve removal of all debris and rehabilitation of areas not rehabilitated during the operational phases of the project. This will comprise the scarification of compacted areas, reshaping of areas, topsoiling and regeneration of all prepared surfaces. All temporary infrastructure/equipment will be disassembled and all other infrastructural development such as haulage roads and stockpile areas will be rehabilitated. (see Appendix L for the Closure Plan).

The decommissioning activities will therefore consist of the following:

- Removal of all equipment, infrastructure, and temporary facilities;
- Removal of unused stockpiled material, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner;
- Shaping and stabilisation of disturbed areas to reduce erosion risk;
- Redistribution of available topsoil to support vegetation recovery;
- Implementation of measures to encourage natural revegetation; and
- Ongoing control of invasive alien plant species.

It is noted that, due to the nature of the mining activity, the excavated quarry void will not be backfilled to original ground levels. Rehabilitation will instead focus on ensuring that the final landform is stable, safe, and environmentally acceptable.

#### DMPR Final Rehabilitation Specifications

In compliance with the DMPR's closure objectives and Section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002):

- All structures and waste material will be removed from the site.
- Unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner, all stockpiled material must be removed from the site during the decommissioning phase.
- Disturbed or compacted areas will be ripped or scarified to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.

- Topsoil will be replaced to its original depth where available and stabilised with indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).
- No waste or scrap material may be buried or burned on site; all waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities.
- Photographic records will be taken at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation and submitted to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.
- The permit holder will apply for a Closure Certificate in accordance with Section 43(4) of the MPRDA and GN R.940 (NEMA) upon completion of rehabilitation.

Final rehabilitation:

- Rehabilitation of the surface area shall entail landscaping, levelling, top dressing, land preparation, seeding (if required) and maintenance, and invasive plant species clearing.
- All mining equipment, and other items used during the mining period must be removed from the site (section 44 of the MPRDA).
- Waste material of any description, including receptacles, scrap, rubble and tyres, must be removed entirely from the mining area and disposed of at a recognized landfill facility. It will not be permitted to be buried or burned on the site.
- The management of invasive plant species must be done in a sporadic manner during the life of the mining activities. Species regarded as Category 1a and 1b invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto) will be eradicated from the site.
- Final rehabilitation shall be completed within a period specified by the Regional Manager.
- Once the mining area was rehabilitated the permit holder is required to submit a closure application to the Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources in accordance with section 43(4) of the MPRDA, 2002 that states: "An application for a closure certificate must be made to the Regional Manager in whose region the land in question is situated within 180 days of the occurrence of the lapsing, abandonment, cancellation, cessation, relinquishment or completion contemplated in subsection (3) and must be accompanied by the prescribed environmental risk report". The Closure Application will be submitted in terms of Regulation 62 of the MPRDA, 2002, and Government Notice 940 of NEMA, 1998 (as amended).

- The quarry will follow a phased and controlled mining sequence that integrates environmental management from the outset. By maintaining a small active footprint, progressively rehabilitating disturbed areas, and adhering to the DMPR's closure requirements, the operation will balance resource utilisation, local economic benefit, and long-term land stability.

#### Closure Requirements

- In accordance with the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002), all infrastructure and waste materials will be removed from site, and disturbed areas will be rehabilitated to an acceptable standard.
- Topsoil will be replaced where available, and surfaces will be stabilised to promote natural vegetation establishment. All waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities, and no on-site disposal will be permitted.
- A closure application will be submitted to the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy in accordance with Section 43 of the MPRDA and applicable NEMA regulations.

### d) Policy and Legislative Context

Table 4: Policy and Legislative Context.

<b>APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND GUIDELINES USED TO COMPILE THE REPORT</b>  (a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process)	<b>REFERENCE WHERE APPLIED</b>	<b>HOW DOES THIS DEVELOPMENT COMPLY AND RESPOND TO THE LEGISLATION AND POLICY CONTEXT.</b>  (E.g. in terms of the National Water Act a Water Use License has/has not been applied for)
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act No. 43 of 1983).	Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity: <i>Physical Environment – Geology and Soil.</i>  Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied on the level of risk – <i>Management of invader plant species.</i>	The mitigation measures proposed for the site includes specifications of the CARA, 1983.
Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto including relevant OHSA regulations.	Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied on the level of risk – <i>Management of Health and Safety Risks.</i>	The mitigation measures proposed for the site includes specifications of the MHSA, 1996

<b>APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND GUIDELINES USED TO COMPILE THE REPORT</b>  (a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process)	<b>REFERENCE WHERE APPLIED</b>	<b>HOW DOES THIS DEVELOPMENT COMPLY AND RESPOND TO THE LEGISLATION AND POLICY CONTEXT.</b>  (E.g. in terms of the National Water Act a Water Use License has/has not been applied for)
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002, (Act No. 28 of 2002) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto.  Section 27	Part A(1)(d) Description of the scope of the proposed overall activity	Application for a mining permit submitted to DMPR-WC.  Ref No: WC30/5/1/3/2/10386MP
National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) and the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014 (as amended ) GNR 983 Listing Notice 1 Activity 21	Part A(1)(d)(i) Listed and specified activities.	Application for environmental authorisation submitted to DMPR-WC.  Ref No: WC30/5/1/3/2/10386MP
National Environmental Management: Air Quality Control Act, 2004 (Act No 39 of 2004) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto specifically the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827.	Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – <i>Air and Noise Quality</i> .  Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied on the level of risk – <i>Dust Handling</i> .	The mitigation measures proposed for the site take into account the NEM:AQA, 2004 and the National Dust Control Regulations.
National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto.	Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity - <i>Biological Environment</i>  Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied on the level of risk – <i>Management of invader plant species</i> .	The mitigation measures proposed for the site includes specifications of the NEM:BA, 2004.
National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No 59 of 2008) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto.  NEM:WA, 2008: National norms and standards for the storage of waste (GN 926)	Part A(1)(d)(ii) Description of the activities to be undertaken	The mitigation measures proposed for the site take into account the NEM:WA.
National Heritage Resources Act. 1999 (Act No 25 of 1999).	Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – <i>Human Environment</i>	The mitigation measures proposed for the site includes specifications of the NHRA, 1999.

<b>APPLICABLE LEGISLATION AND GUIDELINES USED TO COMPILE THE REPORT</b>  (a description of the policy and legislative context within which the development is proposed including an identification of all legislation, policies, plans, guidelines, spatial tools, municipal development planning frameworks and instruments that are applicable to this activity and are to be considered in the assessment process)	<b>REFERENCE WHERE APPLIED</b>	<b>HOW DOES THIS DEVELOPMENT COMPLY AND RESPOND TO THE LEGISLATION AND POLICY CONTEXT.</b>  (E.g. in terms of the National Water Act a Water Use License has/has not been applied for)
National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998) read together with applicable amendments and regulations thereto.	Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – <i>Hydrology</i> .  Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied on the level of risk.	The proposed project does not require a Water Use Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998). As mentioned earlier, the proposed mining footprint extends into an area that has previously been used for mining, and no activity will take place in or within 1km radius of any water bodies. Any water required for the implementation of the project will be bought from a registered source and transported to on site.  The mitigation measures proposed for the site includes specifications of the NWA, 1998.
Public Participation Guideline in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations	Part A(1)(h)(ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed	Public participation was conducted in accordance with the guidelines published in terms of the NEMA EIA Regulations

**e) Need and desirability of the proposed activities.**

(Describe Methodology or technology to be employed, including the type of commodity to the prospected/mined and for a linear activity, a description of the rout of the activity)

The increase in building, construction and road maintenance projects in the vicinity of the property triggered the need of the Applicant to trade with the available aggregate / gravel from a permitted area. The proposed aggregate / gravel mining operation will entail the removal of aggregate / gravel, from an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities. The mining of the mineral was identified as a feasible business opportunity that will also bring about the diversification of activities on the property, extending it from dormant agricultural land to include small scale mining.

The project will contribute to the local economy, both directly and through the multiplier effect that its presence will create, as equipment and supplies are purchased locally, and wages are spent at local businesses, generating both jobs and income in the area.

The dolerite mined from the earmarked area will be sold to the building, construction and road maintenance industry in the vicinity of the property. The mining of the aggregate from the proposed site will benefit the general society in that it will contribute to the upgrading of road infrastructure of the region, thereby enabling road users to safely travel through the district. The upgrading and maintenance of roads is of high priority and contributes to the improvement of the infrastructure network of South Africa.

The need and desirability of the proposed project was assessed in terms of the National Department of Environmental Affairs' Guideline on Need and Desirability (first version published in terms of section 24J of the NEMA in 2014, and second version in 2017)). The following table shows the questions that were considered in this regard.

Table 5: Need and desirability determination.

1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES		
<u>How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?</u>		
Question	Response	Level of Desirability
How were ecological integrity considerations taken into account?	<p>As discussed under Part A(1)(g)(iv)(1)(a) <i>Type of environment affected by the proposed activity</i>, when the mining footprint is layered over the Mining and Biodiversity Map, it does not fall over and area of any specified for risk of mining therefore the risk is seen to be insignificant. The site-specific groundcover of the proposed mining area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. Overall, the site reflects a landscape significantly altered by excavation activities, with reduced vegetation cover in disturbed areas and remnant natural veld persisting along the periphery.</p> <p>In terms of likely botanical impacts, the operational phase is expected to result in low to moderate impacts on vegetation, as a significant portion of the proposed mining footprint has already been disturbed by previous excavation and surface clearing activities. The remaining undisturbed areas, primarily located along the periphery of the site, will experience moderate impacts due to vegetation removal, which are difficult to mitigate given the nature of the development. While the intensity of impact within the footprint will be high at a local scale, the affected vegetation appears to be relatively homogeneous and widespread in the surrounding landscape, and the overall disturbance footprint is limited. As such, the impact is not expected to be significant at a broader regional scale. Potential cumulative impacts are considered to be limited and of low significance.</p> <p>Subsequently the proposed development area is largely well located in terms of avoiding sensitive receptors and the development will not compromise the survival of any specific flora or terrestrial vertebrate species on the study area or beyond if mitigation measures are fully implemented and concluded that the earmarked footprint (S1) is not of high conservation priority. It is therefore, in the EAP's opinion that the impacts on the vegetation do not constitute a fatal flaw to the proposed mining operation and so there is no reason to block the project in that regard.</p>	Desirable
How will this development disturb or enhance ecosystems and/or result in the loss or protection of biological diversity?		

## 1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
	<p>Also refer to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(d)(ii) Description of the activities to be undertaken – Clearing of Vegetation;</li> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – Mining and Biodiversity;</li> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – Biodiversity Conservation Areas;</li> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity – Groundcover;</li> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(h)(iv)(1)(c) Description of specific environmental features and infrastructure on the site – Site Specific Terrestrial Biodiversity, Conservation Areas and Groundcover,</li> <li>⌘ Part A(1)(h)(viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and the level of risk.</li> </ul> <p>As discussed under <i>Part A(1)(g)(iv)(1)(a)</i>. The Applicant will make use of the existing access roads to the mining area. Should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures proposed in the EMPr the impact of the proposed activity on the vegetation and groundcover in general is deemed to be of low significance.</p>	
How will this development pollute and/or degrade the biophysical environment?	<p>Due of the nature of the proposed activity, it is inevitable that the present vegetation cover of the earmarked footprint will eventually be removed to allow access to the aggregate (dolerite) / gravel resource, only to be replaced (to some extent) during the rehabilitation phase. Taking the above mentioned into consideration, the quarry will have relatively little impact on the vegetation and fauna around it provided that the mitigation measures are adhered to. Therefore, should the permit holder adhere to the mitigation measures proposed in this report it is believed that the impact on the biophysical environment is of acceptable significance.</p>	Desirable
What waste will be generated by this development?	<p>The general waste to be generated at the mine will mainly consist of paper, plastic, tin, and/or glass from the office, workshop and processing area. All general waste will be contained in sealable refuse bins that will be placed at the office area until it is</p>	Highly Desirable

## 1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
	<p>transported to a recognised general waste landfill site. A recognized contractor will service the chemical toilets and be responsible for the removal of the sewerage to a registered sewerage handling facility.</p> <p>As mentioned earlier, hazardous waste may result from accidental spillages/breakdowns. Such contaminated areas will immediately (within two hours of occurrence) be cleaned and the contaminated soil will be contained in a designated hazardous waste container that will be kept in a bunded area with impermeable surface until it is removed from site by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor to an approved facility. No waste will be disposed of, buried, burned or treated on the site.</p>	
How will this development disturb or enhance landscapes and/or sites that constitute the nation's cultural heritage?	The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.	Desirable
How will this development use and/or impact on non-renewable natural resources?	Beaufort West Quarry is a dolerite/gravel resource of at least 1000 000 m <sup>3</sup> that shows a potential life of mine of would still be available for many years. In light of this, it is believed that the mining permit holder could responsibly consume the dolerite resource on the property over a period of 5 years.	Desirable
How will this development use and/or impact on renewable natural resources and the ecosystem of which they are part?	It is proposed that approximately 10 000 litres of water will be needed per day during the dry months to manage dust emissions from the proposed operation. As mentioned earlier, the contractor will strive to manage dust generation through alternative suppression methods to restrict water use to the absolute minimum. Presently, it is proposed that water will be bought and	Desirable

**1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES**

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
	transported to site. The contractor will be encouraged to consider the use of non-potable water for mining related activities. The use of solar power should also be considered as an alternative power source to the offices and/or workshops.	
How were a risk-averse and cautious approach applied in terms of ecological impacts?	If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that ecological impacts should be fully mitigated.	Desirable
How will the ecological impacts resulting from this development impact on people's environmental right?	Should the mining activities be approved the potential visual-, dust-, and noise impacts associated with the proposed activity will be of low significance. If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that no environmental rights of the surrounding residents/public will be affected by the ecological impacts associated with the proposed activity.	Highly Desirable
Describe the linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services applicable to the area in question and how the development's ecological impacts will result in socio-economic impacts.		Desirable
Based on all of the above, how will this development positively or negatively impact on ecological integrity objectives/targets/considerations of the area?	If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that the mining activities will not affect the physical, psychological, cultural or social needs of the community in a negative manner nor will it impact negatively on the socio-economic status of the area.	

**1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES**

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
Considering the need to secure ecological integrity and a healthy biophysical environment, describe how the alternatives identified, resulted in the selection of the “best practicable environmental option” in terms of ecological considerations		

**2. PROMOTING JUSTIFIABLE ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT**

What is the socio-economic context of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
What is the socio-economic context of the area?	Please refer to Heading 2(h)(iv)(1)(a) Socio-economic Environment.	Highly Desirable
Considering the socio-economic context, what will the socio-economic impacts be of the development, and specifically also on the socio-economic objectives of the area?	As mentioned earlier, should this mining permit be approved the applicant will be able to, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Provide employment opportunities;</li> <li>■ the people/businesses of Beaufort West will benefit from diversification of gravel sources which will result in competitive product costs.</li> <li>■ It will also diversify the income of the property as well as potential employees and clients.</li> </ul>	

## 1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
How will this development address the specific physical, psychological, developmental, cultural and social needs and interests of the relevant communities?	If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that the mining activities will not affect the physical, psychological, cultural or social needs of the community in a negative manner nor will it impact negatively on the socio-economic status of the area.	Highly Desirable
Will the development result in equitable impact distribution, in the short- and long-term?	The mining activities proposes to operate in a socially and economically sustainable manner during both the short- and long term.	Highly Desirable
In terms of location, describe how the placement of the proposed development will contribute to the area.	As mentioned above the proposed area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the landowner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The Applicant will make use of the existing access point to the mining area. Should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures proposed in the EMPr the impact of the proposed activity on the surrounding area in general is deemed to be of low significance thereby keeping the impact on the receiving environment as low as possible.	Highly Desirable
How were a risk-averse and cautious approach applied in terms of socio-economic impacts?	No negative socio-economic impacts could, at this stage, be identified that cannot be managed through the implementation of mitigation measures.	Highly Desirable
How will the socio-economic impacts resulting from this development impact on people's environmental right?	As mentioned in Heading 3(j)(1) <i>Impact on the socio-economic condition of any directly affected person</i> , the activity may have an impact on the visual characteristics of the surrounding environment and may potentially affect air quality and possibly the noise ambiance of the study area. However, should the mining activities be approved the potential visual-, dust-, and noise impacts associated with the proposed activity will be of low significance. If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring	Highly Desirable

**1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES**

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
	programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that no environmental rights of the surrounding residents/public will be affected by the socio-economic impacts associated with the proposed activity	
Considering the linkages and dependencies between human wellbeing, livelihoods and ecosystem services, describe the linkages and dependencies applicable to the area in question and how the development's socio-economic impacts will result in ecological impacts?	As mentioned above should the mining activities be approved the potential visual-, dust-, and noise impacts associated with the proposed activity will be of low significance. If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that no environmental rights of the surrounding residents/public will be affected by the socio-economic impacts associated with the proposed activity.	Highly Desirable
What measures were taken to pursue the selection of the "best practicable environmental option" in terms of socio-economic considerations?	Please refer to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Part A(1)(g)(vii) The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environmental and the community that may be affected.</li> </ul>	Highly Desirable
What measures were taken to pursue environmental justice so that adverse environmental impacts shall not be distributed in such a manner as to unfairly discriminate against any person, particularly vulnerable and disadvantaged persons?		

## 1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
<p>What measures were taken to pursue equitable access to environmental resources, benefits and services to meet basic human needs and ensure human wellbeing, and what special measures were taken to ensure access thereto by categories of persons disadvantaged by unfair discrimination?</p>	<p>The mining site will (if approved) operate in accordance with, amongst others, the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ CARA, 1983 – to ensure agriculture related compliance;</li> <li>➤ Financial Provision Regulations, 2015 – to ensure compliance in terms of rehabilitation;</li> <li>➤ Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (as amended) – to ensure employee safety;</li> <li>➤ MPRDA, 2002 (as amended) – to ensure mining related compliance;</li> <li>➤ NEM:AQA, 2004 – to ensure air quality related compliance;</li> <li>➤ NEM:BA, 2004 – to ensure biodiversity related compliance;</li> <li>➤ NEM:WA, 2008 – to ensure waste related compliance;</li> <li>➤ NEMA, 1998 (as amended) – to ensure environmental related compliance;</li> </ul>	<p>Highly Desirable</p>
<p>What measures were taken to ensure that the responsibility for the environmental health and safety consequences of the development has been addressed throughout the development's life cycle?</p>		
<p>Considering the interests, needs and values of all the interested and affected parties, describe how the development will allow for opportunities for all the segments of the community that is consistent with the priority needs of the local area.</p>	<p>As mentioned earlier, should this mining permit be approved the applicant will be able to,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Provide employment opportunities;</li> <li>➤ the people/businesses of Beaufort West will benefit from diversification of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel sources which will result in competitive product costs.</li> <li>➤ It will also diversify the income of the property as well as potential employees and clients.</li> </ul>	<p>Highly Desirable</p>

**1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES**

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
<p>What measures have been taken to ensure that current and/or future workers will be informed of work that potentially might be harmful to human health or the environment or of dangers associated with the work, and what measures have been taken to ensure that the right of workers to refuse such work will be respected and protected.</p>	<p>The mining activities will be in accordance with the specifications of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996. Site management will have daily discussions with the drill rig operators regarding the work to be performed and the environment in which the work will take place. Grievances/concerns can be lodged during the daily site meetings.</p>	<p align="center">Highly Desirable</p>
<p>Describe how the development will impact on job creation in terms of, amongst other aspects?</p>	<p>As mentioned earlier, should this mining permit be approved the applicant will be able to,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Provide employment opportunities;</li> <li>■ the people/businesses of Beaufort West will benefit from diversification of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel sources which will result in competitive product costs.</li> <li>■ It will also diversify the income of the property as well as potential employees and clients.</li> </ul>	<p align="center">Highly Desirable</p>
<p>What measures were taken to ensure that the environment will be held in public trust for the people, that the beneficial use of environmental resources will serve the public interest, and that the environment will be protected as the people's common heritage.</p>	<p>Should the mining permit be approved the activities will operate under a valid mining permit issued by the DMPR, compliance of the mine with the approval conditions can be reported on as per the departmental specifications and also be managed in accordance with all the mining and environmental related legislations.</p>	<p align="center">Highly Desirable</p>

## 1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

Question	Response	Level of Desirability
Are the mitigation measures proposed realistic and what long-term environmental legacy and managed burden will be left.	It is believed that the mitigation measures proposed in this document is realistic and can be implemented (when needed) by the proposed activities. If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, the residual impact on the environment is of low significance.	Highly Desirable
What measures were taken to ensure that the costs of remedying pollution, environmental degradation and consequent adverse health effects and of preventing, controlling or minimising further pollution environmental damage or adverse health effects will be paid for by those responsible for harming the environment.	In terms of Section 41 of the MPRDA, 2002 a mining permit holder must submit a financial provision to the DMPR that is sufficient to rehabilitate or manage the negative environmental impacts related to the mining activity.	Highly Desirable
Considering the need to secure ecological integrity and a healthy bio-physical environment, describe how the alternatives identified, resulted in the selection of the best practicable environmental option in terms of socio-economic considerations	Please refer to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>∞ Part A(1)(g)(i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered;</li> <li>∞ Part A(1)(g)(iv)(1)(c) Description of specific environmental features and infrastructure on the site – Site Specific Socio-Economic Environment;</li> <li>∞ Part A(1)(g)(vii) The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity and alternatives will have on the environmental and the community that may be affected.</li> </ul>	Highly Desirable
Describe the positive and negative cumulative socio-economic impacts bearing in mind the size,	Considering the presence of an existing adjacent mine, the cumulative socio-economic impacts of the proposed project are expected to be moderate at a local scale but low at a regional level due to the relatively small size and limited footprint of both	Highly Desirable

**1. SECURING ECOLOGICAL SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT AND USE OF NATURAL RESOURCES**

How will this development impact on the ecological integrity of the area?

<b>Question</b>	<b>Response</b>	<b>Level of Desirability</b>
<p>scale, scope and nature of the project in relation to its location and other planned developments in the area.</p>	<p>operations. Positively, the clustering of mining activities may enhance local economic benefits through increased employment opportunities, strengthened demand for local goods and services, and potential improvements to shared infrastructure such as access roads. However, negative cumulative impacts may include increased dust, noise, and traffic, greater pressure on local water resources, and a combined loss of grazing or natural land, which could affect nearby land users. If the proposed mitigation measures and monitoring programs, as proposed in this document, is implemented, it is believed that the negative cumulative impacts will relatively low.</p>	

**f) Motivation for the overall preferred site, activities and technology alternative.**

The proposed site (Site Alternative 1) was identified as the preferred and only viable site alternative based on the following:

- As mentioned earlier, the proposed area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the land owner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not necessitate the loss of agricultural field with high potential to the landowner. This was deemed the only site alternative as this is the only area that will be viable for the landowner due to the low agricultural potential.
- Access to the proposed mining area is possible via the existing access road with a formal (existing) entrance onto the N1.

The environmental impact assessment process assessed the feasibility of the proposed site alternative to identify fatal flaws that are deemed as severe as to prevent the activity continuing, or warrant another site or project alternative. The outcome of the assessment showed that should the mitigation measures and monitoring programmes proposed in this document be implemented, no fatal flaws could be identified that prevents the activity continuing. In light of the above, the mining proposal was updated to incorporate the project related mitigation measures and monitoring programmes identified during the assessment process. The preferred development footprint was subsequently finalized and is depicted on the attached site activities plan (Appendix C).

**g) Full description of the process followed to reach the proposed preferred alternatives within the site.**

NB!! – This section is about the determination of the specific site layout and the location of infrastructure and activities on site, having taken into consideration the issues raised by interested and affected parties, and the consideration of alternatives to the initially proposed site layout.

**i) Details of the development footprint alternatives considered.**

With reference to the site plan provided as Appendix 4 and the location of the individual activities on site, provide details of the alternatives considered with respect to:

- (a) the property on which or location where it is proposed to undertake the activity;
- (b) the type of activity to be undertaken;
- (c) the design or layout of the activity;
- (d) the technology to be used in the activity;
- (e) the operational aspects of the activity; and
- (f) the option of not implementing the activity.

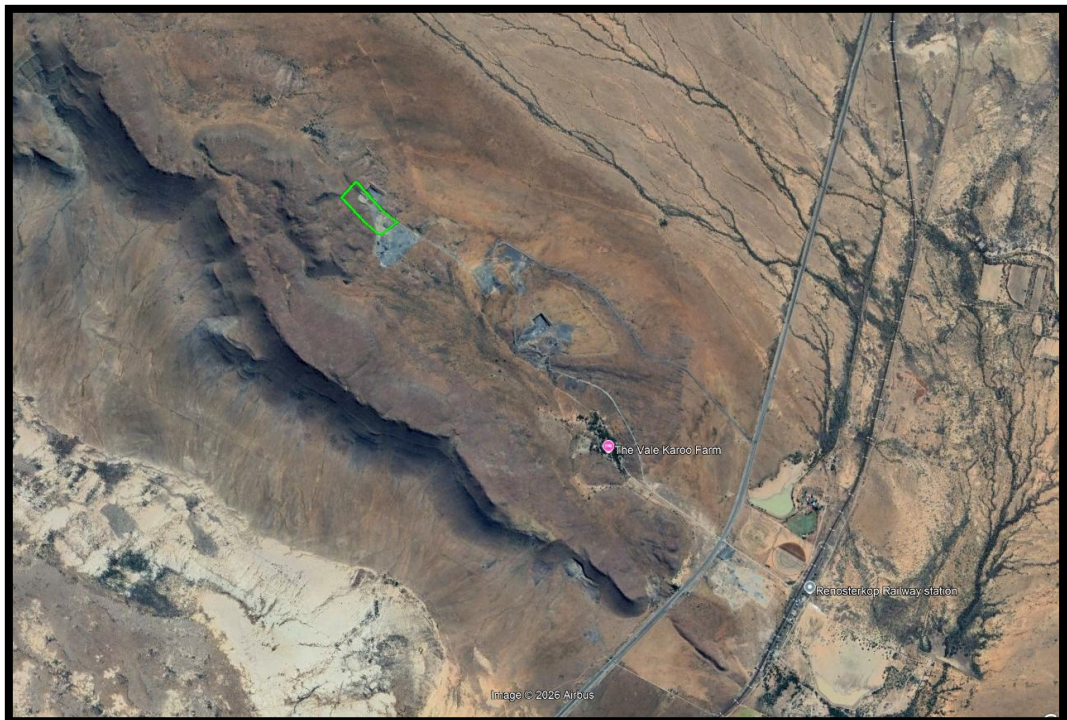
Due to the application being an extension of an existing quarry, the proposed mining area, as indicated on the Regulation 2.2 Mine Plan (Appendix A), was identified as the

preferred and only viable site alternative as it entails the mining of an area previously used for aggregate / gravel mining purposes.

**Site Alternative 1 (S1) (Preferred and Only Site Alternative):** Site Alternative 1 entails the mining of an area previously used for the mining of aggregate / gravel within the GPS coordinates as listed in the table below.

*Table 6: GPS Coordinates of Site Alternative 1 (preferred and only site alternative)*

NUMBER	DEGREES, MINUTES, SECONDS		DECIMAL DEGREES	
	LAT (S)	LONG (E)	LAT (S)	LONG (E)
A	32°10'52.586"	22°49'43.979"	-32.181274	22.828883
B	32°10'57.184"	22°49'47.251"	-32.182551	22.829792
C	32°10'59.779"	22°49'49.184"	-32.183272	22.830329
D	32°11'2.569"	22°49'52.172"	-32.184047	22.831159
E	32°11'4.654"	22°49'47.345"	-32.184626	22.829818
F	32°11'1.331"	22°49'44.166"	-32.183703	22.828935
G	32°10'55.358"	22°49'39.659"	-32.182044	22.827683



*Figure 3: Satellite view showing the position of Site Alternative 1 (green polygon) within the surrounding landscape.*

Site Alternative 1 was identified during the assessment phase of the environmental impact assessment, by the Applicant and project team, as the **preferred and only site alternative** due to the following:

- The proposed area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the landowner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not result in the loss of high-potential agricultural land for the landowner. This site was identified as the only viable alternative, as its low agricultural potential makes it the most suitable option for development.
- Access to the proposed mining area is possible via the existing access road with a formal (existing) entrance onto the N1.

**No-go Alternative:** The no-go alternative entails no change to the *status quo* and is therefore a real alternative that needs to be considered. The aggregate / gravel to be mined from the existing quarry will be sold to the building, road rehabilitation/maintenance and associated construction industry, if however, the no-go alternative is implemented:

- the Applicant cannot utilise the mineral resource on this property;
- the proposed employment opportunities will be lost;
- the people/businesses of Beaufort West will not benefit from diversification of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel sources which will escalating product costs.

In light of this, the no-go alternative was no deemed to be the preferred alternative.

## ii) Details of the Public Participation Process Followed

Describe the process undertaken to consult interested and affected parties including public meetings and one on one consultation. NB the affected parties must be specifically consulted regardless of whether or not they attended public meetings. (Information to be provided to affected parties must include sufficient detail of the intended operation to enable them to assess what impact the activities will have on them or on the use of their land.

During this public participation process the relevant stakeholders and I&AP's will be informed of the project by means of an advertisement in Oudtshoorn Courant on 09 April 2026, and two on-site notices that will be placed at visible locations, one on the site entrance, and another at the at the local Beaufort West Municipality.

A notification letter inviting comments on the DBAR over a 30-days commenting period (ending 15 May 2026) was sent to the landowner, neighbouring landowners, stakeholders and other I&AP that may be interested in the project. The comments received on the DBAR were incorporated into the Final Basic Assessment Report (FBAR) to be submitted to the DMPR for consideration. The following I&AP's and stakeholders will be informed of the project:

Table 7: List of the I&AP's and stakeholders that were notified of the proposed aggregate / gravel mine project.

SURROUNDING LANDOWNERS & INTERESTED AND AFFECTED PARTIES	STAKEHOLDERS
<p><b><u>Surrounding landowners &amp; lawful occupiers:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust – Landowner – Waai Kraal 120 Portion 4</li> <li>■ Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust – Riet Fontein 122 Portion 2 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust – Riet Fontein 122 Portion 9 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust – Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 4 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Werner Koster Property Trust – Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 2 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Werner Koster Property Trust – Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 3 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Werner Koster Property Trust – Waai Kraal 120 Portion 1 (Remaining extent)</li> <li>■ Collin de Villiers Trust – Beaufort West Portion 0</li> <li>■ Tamarisk Trust – Rietfontein 122 Portion 5</li> <li>■ Tamarisk Trust – Farm 71 Portion 0 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Tamarisk Trust – Welgevonden 69 0 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ South African National Roads Agency - adjacent landowner of Waai Kraal 120 Portion 4</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning</li> <li>■ Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning - George</li> <li>■ Department of Social Development</li> <li>■ Department of Social Development – Beaufort West</li> <li>■ Department of Economic Development and Tourism;</li> <li>■ Department of Transport and Public Works</li> <li>■ Department of Public Works and Infrastructure;</li> <li>■ Department of Agriculture;</li> <li>■ Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries;</li> <li>■ Department of Labour - Western Cape Provincial Office;</li> <li>■ Department of Rural Development and Land Reform - Western Cape District Offices</li> <li>■ Department of Water and Sanitation;</li> <li>■ Breede-Gouritz Cathement Management Agency</li> <li>■ Central Karoo District Municipality;</li> <li>■ Beaufort West Local Municipality;</li> <li>■ Beaufort West Local Municipality - Ward 2</li> <li>■ Heritage Western Cape</li> <li>■ South African Heritage Resources Agency;</li> <li>■ Cape Nature</li> <li>■ Cape Nature - George</li> <li>■ ESKOM</li> <li>■ Transnet</li> <li>■ South African National Roads Agency - adjacent landowner of Waai Kraal 120 Portion 4</li> </ul>
<b>I&amp;AP'S AND STAKEHOLDERS</b>	

SURROUNDING LANDOWNERS & INTERESTED AND AFFECTED PARTIES	STAKEHOLDERS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mr J Marais Rhenosterkop Quarry</li> <li>■ Mr M Anstey Non-Direct Surrounding Landowner &amp; Tenant</li> <li>■ Mr R Koster Courlandskloof</li> <li>■ Mr W Nigrini Non-Direct Surrounding Tenant Rhenosterkop</li> </ul>	

As mentioned above, a 30-days commenting period will be allowed which expires on 15 May 2026). In accordance with the timeframes stipulated in the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended ) the Draft Basic Assessment Report was compiled and distributed for comment and perusal to the I&AP's and stakeholders. The comments received on the DBAR will be incorporated into the Final Basic (FBAR) that will be submitted for decision making to DMPR.


### iii) Summary of issues raised by I&APs

(Compile the table summarising comments and issues raised, and reaction to those responses)

Table 8: Summary of issues raised by IAPs

Interested and Affected Parties List the name of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted	Date Comments Received	Issues raised	EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant	Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issues and or response were incorporated.
<b>AFFECTED PARTIES</b>	<b>X</b>			
<b>Landowner/s</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <span style="color: green;">■</span> Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust – Landowner – Waai Kraal 120 Portion 4           </li> </ul>	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR. A request to renew the landowner agreement for another 5 years was sent to the landowner.		
<b>Lawful occupier/s of the land</b>				
N/A				
<b>Landowners or lawful occupiers on adjacent properties</b>	<b>X</b>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gideon Vivier Boerdery Trust</li> <li> <span style="color: green;">■</span> Riet Fontein 122 Portion 2 (Remaining Extent)           </li> <li> <span style="color: green;">■</span> Riet Fontein 122 Portion 9 (Remaining Extent)           </li> <li> <span style="color: green;">■</span> Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 4 (Remaining Extent)           </li> </ul>	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Werner Koster Property Trust</li> <li> <span style="color: green;">■</span> Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 2 (Remaining Extent)           </li> </ul>	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		

<b>Interested and Affected Parties</b> List the name of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted	<b>Date Comments Received</b>	<b>Issues raised</b>	<b>EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant</b>	<b>Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issues and or response were incorporated.</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Rhenosterkop 155 Portion 3 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Waai Kraal 120 Portion 1 (Remaining extent)</li> </ul>				
Collin de Villiers Trust <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Beaufort West Portion 0</li> </ul>	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.	
Tamarisk Trust <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Rietfontein 122 Portion 5</li> <li>■ Farm 71 Portion 0 (Remaining Extent)</li> <li>■ Welgevonden 69 0 (Remaining Extent)</li> </ul>	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.	
<b>Municipal councillor</b>				
Cllr. Josias De Kock Reynolds (Ward 2)	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.	
<b>Municipality</b>				
Beaufort West Local Municipality	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.	
Central Karoo District Municipality	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.	

<b>Interested and Affected Parties</b> List the name of persons consulted in this column, and  Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted	<b>Date Comments Received</b>	<b>Issues raised</b>	<b>EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant</b>	<b>Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issues and or response were incorporated.</b>
<b>Organs of state (Responsible for infrastructure that may be affected Roads Department, Eskom, Telkom, DWA e</b>				
Department of Transport and Public Works	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Public Works and Infrastructure;	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Eskom	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Transnet	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
South African National Roads Agency and adjacent landowner of:   Waai Kraal 120 Portion 4	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
<b>Communities</b>	N/A	No community were identified within the study area.		
<b>Dept. Land Affairs</b>		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Agriculture;	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		

<b>Interested and Affected Parties</b> List the name of persons consulted in this column, and Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted	<b>Date Comments Received</b>	<b>Issues raised</b>	<b>EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant</b>	<b>Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issues and or response were incorporated.</b>
Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries;	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
<b>Traditional Leaders</b>	N/A			
<b>Dept. Environmental Affairs</b>				
Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Environmental Affairs and Development Planning - George	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
<b>Other Competent Authorities affected</b>				
Department of Labour - Western Cape Provincial Office;	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Public Works and Infrastructure	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Rural Development and Land Reform - Western Cape District Offices	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Water and Sanitation	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Breede-Gouritz Catchment Management Agency	X	Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		

<b>Interested and Affected Parties</b>		<b>Date Comments Received</b>	<b>Issues raised</b>	<b>EAPs response to issues as mandated by the applicant</b>	<b>Section and paragraph reference in this report where the issues and or response were incorporated.</b>
<b>List the name of persons consulted in this column, and</b>  <b>Mark with an X where those who must be consulted were in fact consulted</b>					
South African Heritage Resources Agency	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Social Development	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Social Development – Beaufort West	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Department of Economic Development and Tourism;	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Heritage Western Cape	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Cape Nature	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Cape Nature - George	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
<b><u>OTHER AFFECTED PARTIES</u></b>					
N/A					
<b><u>INTERESTED PARTIES</u></b>					
Mr J Marais - Rhenosterkop Quarry	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Mr M Anstey - Non-Direct Surrounding Landowner & Tenant	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Mr R Koster - Courlandskloof	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		
Mr W Nigrini - Non-Direct Surrounding Tenant Rhenosterkop	X		Any comments received on the draft BAR will be incorporated into the final BAR.		

**iv) The Environmental attributes associated with the alternatives.**

(The environmental attributes described must include socio-economic, social, heritage, cultural, geographical, physical and biological aspects)

**(1) Baseline Environment**

**(a) Type of environment affected by the proposed activity.**

(Its current geographical, physical, biological, socio-economic, and cultural character)

This section describes the biophysical, cultural and socio-economic environment that may be affected and the baseline conditions, which are likely to be affected by the proposed mining activity.

**PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT**

**CLIMATE**

According to the weather online website, Beaufort West lies on 1398m above sea level. Beaufort West is influenced by the local steppe climate. It receives the lowest rainfall (0.2 mm) in January and the highest (81.8 mm) in April. The weather averages for the month of March, temperature averages around 27°C and at night it feels like 16°C. In March, Beaufort West gets on an average 31.4 mm of rain and approximately 4 rainy days in the month. Humidity is close to 46%.

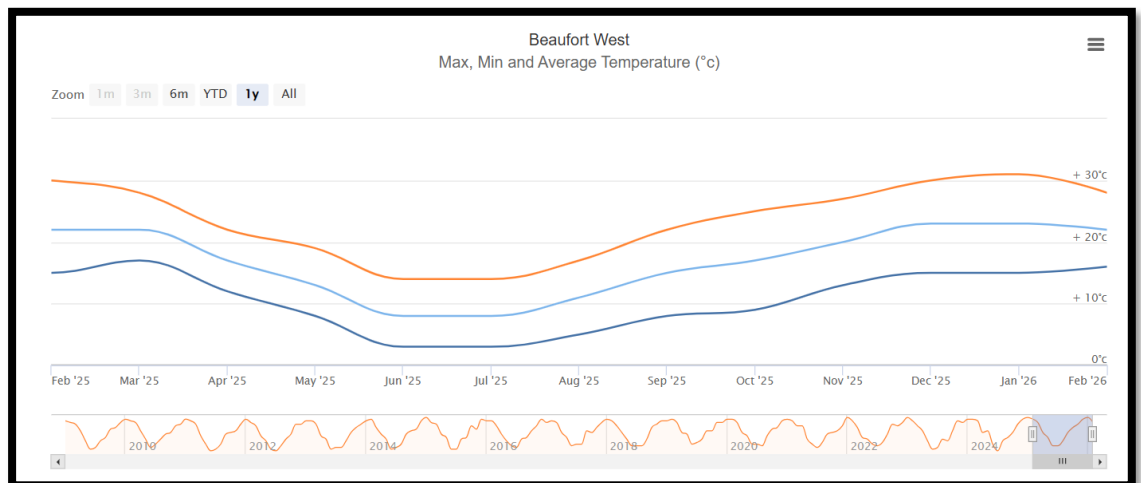


Figure 4: Statistical representation of the temperatures for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <http://www.worldweatheronline.com>).

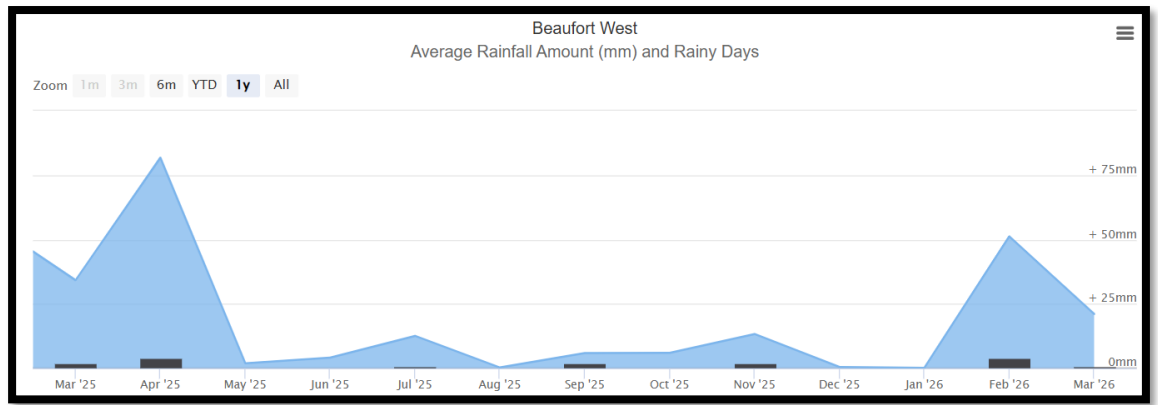


Figure 5: Statistical representation of the precipitation for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx>).

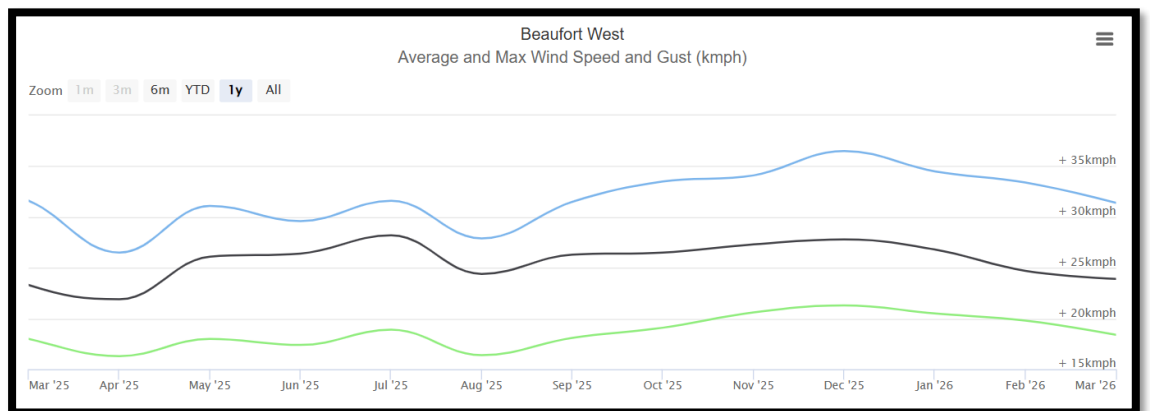


Figure 6: Statistical representation of the wind speed for the Beaufort West region (Chart obtained from <https://www.worldweatheronline.com/beaufort-west-weather-averages/western-cape/za.aspx>).

According to the wind statistics as presented on Windfinder.com the prevalent wind direction distribution of Beaufort West is in a eastern direction (western wind), with the average wind speed being between 1 -7 knots as shown in the figure below (measured at the Beaufort West weather station).

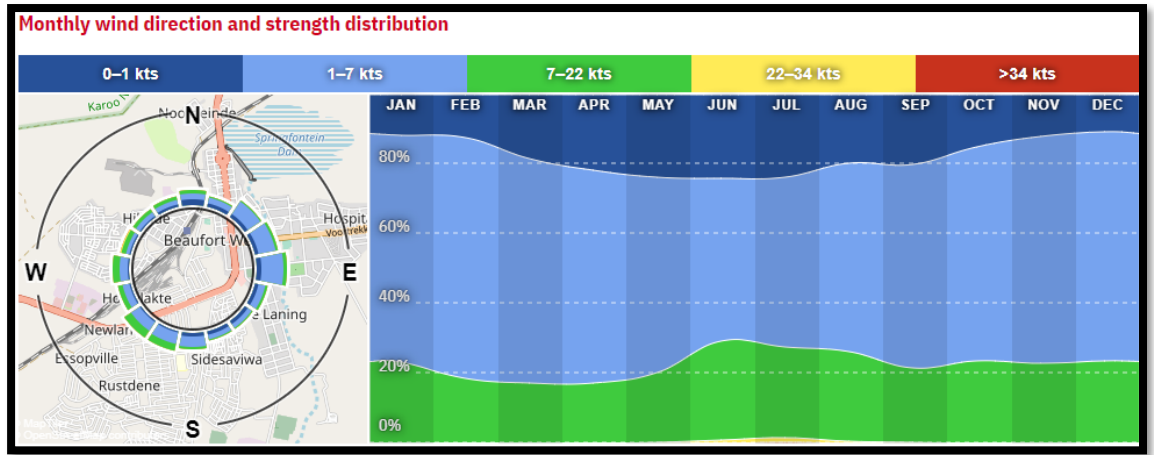


Figure 7: Image showing the dominant wind direction (first panel) and average wind speed over a 12 month period for the Beaufort West area (image obtained from [https://www.windfinder.com/windstatistics/beaufort\\_west](https://www.windfinder.com/windstatistics/beaufort_west))

## TOPOGRAPHY

Extremely irregular to slightly undulating plains covered with dwarf spiny shrubland dominated by Karoo dwarf shrubs (e.g. *Chrysocoma ciliata*, *Eriocephalus ericoides*) with rare low trees (e.g. *Euclea undu-Jata*). Dense stands of drought-resistant grasses (*Stipagrostis*, *Aristida*) cover (especially after abundant rains) broad sandy bottom lands. The figure below shows the elevation loss from the proposed mining footprint to the town of Beaufort West to be 146 m over 29.5 km.

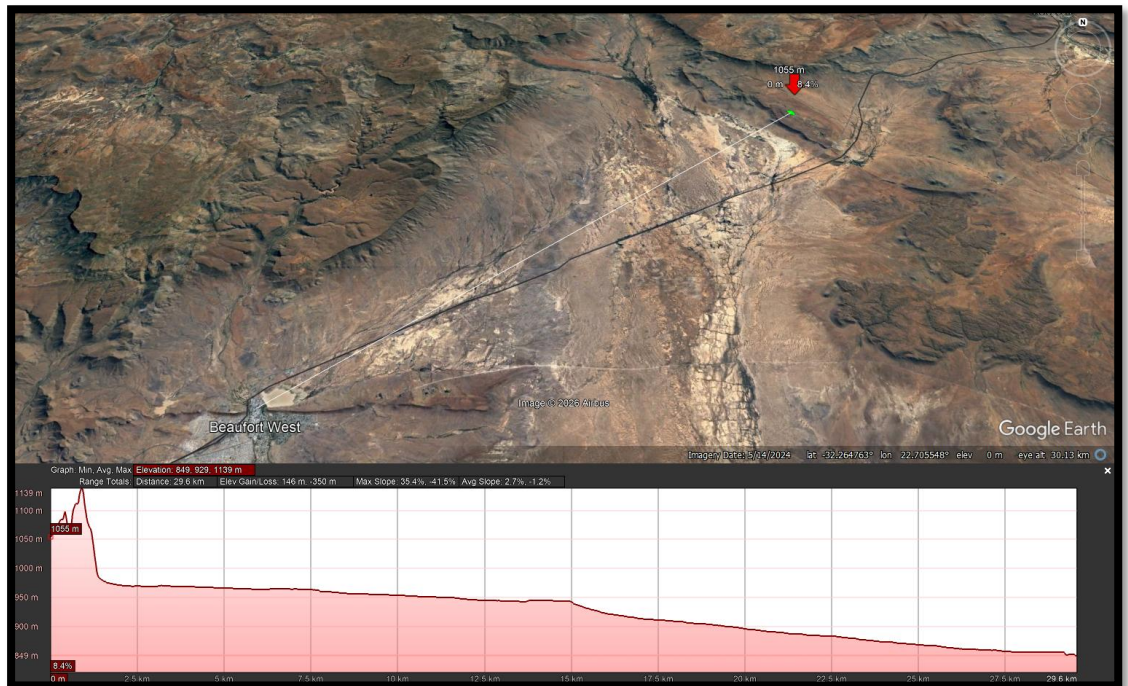


Figure 8: Elevation profile showing the topography between the proposed mining footprint (white line) and the town of Beaufort West. (Image obtained from Google Earth).

## **VISUAL CHARACTERISTICS**

The visual character of the surrounding areas mainly comprises of a dormant agricultural setting and previously mined area adjacent to the site (aggregate / gravel). The aesthetic ambiance of the area is that of a rural area.

## **AIR AND NOISE QUALITY**

The wind patterns in Beaufort West are somewhat influenced by seasonal variations. According to the wind statistics as presented on Windfinder.com the prevalent wind direction distribution of Beaufort West is in a north/north-eastern direction from December to March. From April the wind changes direction from east-northeast to east until September when it gradually returns to the north-eastern trend. The ambient noise levels of the surrounding area are low with the noise levels of the greater surrounding area are low representing that of a rural area, with the noise levels of the study area (immediate surroundings) impacted by farming operations and the N1.

## **GEOLOGY AND SOIL**

The geology of the study area comprises mostly primitive, skeletal soils in rocky areas developing over sedimentary rocks such as mudstones and arenites of the Adelaide Subgroup of the Karoo Supergroup and to a lesser extent also the Ecca Group (Waterford and Volksrust Formations) as well as Jurassic dolerite sills and dykes and subsummit positions of mesas and butts with dolerite boulder slopes. Almost entirely lb land type.

Mudstones and sandstones of the Beaufort Group (Adelaide Subgroup) with some Ecca (Fort Brown Formation) shales supporting very shallow and stony soils of the Glenrosa and/or Mispah forms, typical of Fe land type.

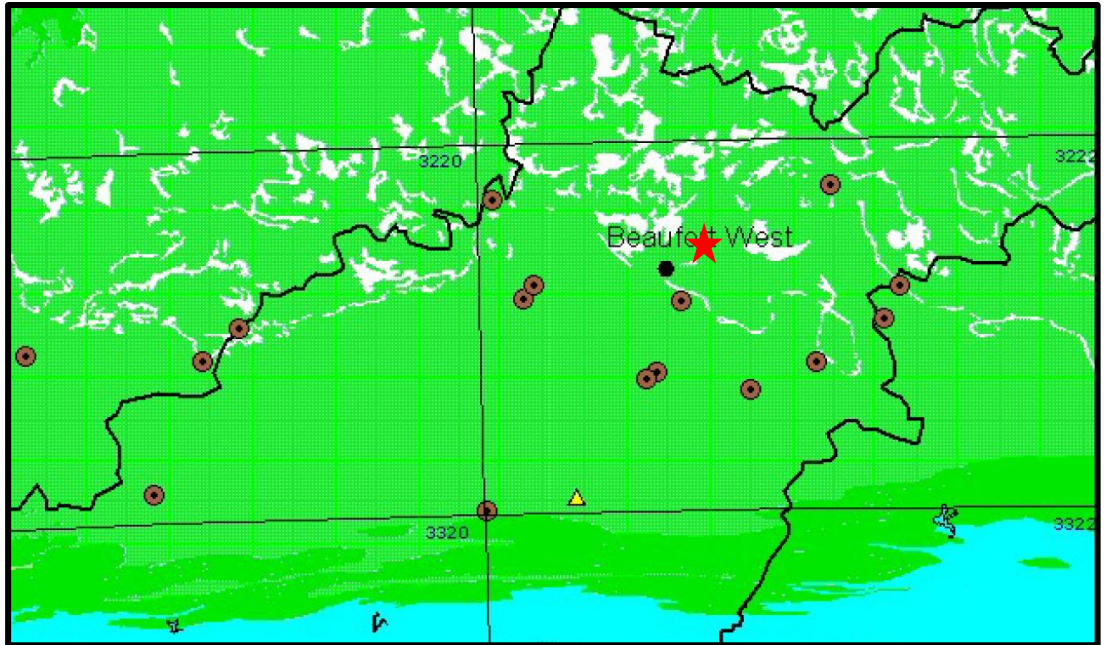


Figure 9: Indication of the simplified geology of the study area, where green represents the Beaufort Group. The proposed mining area is indicated by the red star. (Image obtained from the Council for Geoscience)

## HYDROLOGY

The proposed project does not require a Water Use Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998). As mentioned earlier, the proposed mining footprint extends into an area that has previously been used for mining, and no activity will take place in or within 1km radius of any water bodies. Any water required for the implementation of the project will be bought from a registered source and transported to on site.

Table 9: Aquatic characteristics of the greater study area

<b>Water Management Area</b>	Fish to Tsitsikamma WMA 16
<b>Sub Water Management Area</b>	Gamtoos Sub-WMA
<b>Quaternary Catchment</b>	L11F
FEPA Status	No fresh water priority area status

According to the National Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (NFEPA) map as presented by SANBI, no rivers NFEPA of conservation importance extends over the proposed footprint (see figure below).

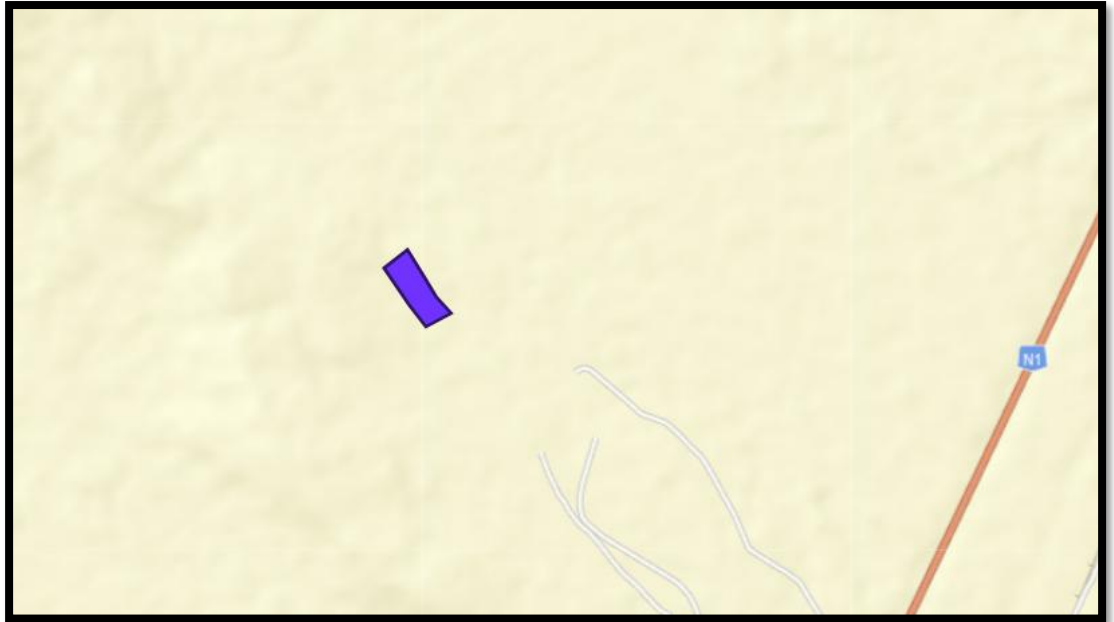


Figure 10: Map showing the proposed mining footprint (purple polygon). (Image obtained from the BGIS Map Viewer – 2017 Strategic Water Source Areas)

## **BIOLOGICAL ENVIRONMENT**

### **MINING AND BIODIVERSITY**

*(Information extracted from the Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector, Department of Environmental Affairs, Department of Mineral Resources, Chamber of Mines, 2013)*

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline, compiled by the South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum (SAMBF) provides the mining sector with a practical, user-friendly manual for integrating biodiversity considerations into planning processes and managing biodiversity during the developmental and operational phases of a mine, from exploration through to closure.

When the mining footprint is layered over the Mining and Biodiversity Map, as shown in the figure below, it does not fall over and area of any specified for risk of mining therefore the risk is seen to be insignificant. The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline's describes areas of moderate risk biodiversity importance as: "*These areas are of moderate biodiversity value.*" The guideline notes that environmental screening, the EIA and specialists should focus on confirming the presence and significance of biodiversity features, and provide a site-specific basis on which to apply the mitigation hierarchy to inform regulatory decision-making.



*Figure 11: The Mining and Biodiversity importance map with the proposed mining footprint indicated by the green polygon. Light brown – moderate biodiversity importance, moderate risk for mining, light brown – moderate biodiversity Importance, moderate risk for mining (image obtained from the BGIS Map Viewer – Mining Guidelines).*

## **BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION AREAS**

The Western Cape Biodiversity Plan (WCBP) shows that the proposed mining footprint falls within an Other Natural Area (light green area). The category is described to be Natural to Near-Natural – Minimise habitat and species loss and ensure ecosystem functionality through strategic landscape planning. Offers flexibility in permissible land uses, but some authorisation may still be required for high impact land uses as per the Biodiversity Spatial Plan Land Use Guidelines and Compliance Requirements.



Figure 12: Western Cape Biodiversity Conservation Plan showing the mining area (Green polygon) in relation to the ONA (Image obtained from BGIS Map Viewer – Western Cape Conservation Plan).

## GROUNDCOVER

According to Mucina and Rutherford (2012) the vegetation type of the surrounding natural areas are known as the Beaufort West Dry Grassland (GH5) that is slightly undulating bottomland landscape covered with tall, dense grassland alternating with patches of karroid scrub occurring especially over calcrete.

Some of the important taxa found in this vegetation type include *Graminoids*: *Antheophora pubescens* (d), *Aristida congesta* (d), *A. diffusa* (d), *Cynodon dactylon* (d), *Digitaria argyrograpta* (d), *Elionurus muticus* (d), *Eragrostis chloromelas* (d), *E. lehmanniana* (d), *E. obtusa* (d), *E. plana* (d), *E. superba* (d), *E. trichophora* (d), *Heteropogon contortus* (d), *Panicum stapfianum* (d), *Setaria sphacelata* (d), *Themeda triandra* (d), *Tragus koelerioides* (d), *Aristida stipitata* subsp. *graciliflora*, *Chloris virgata*, *Cymbopogon pospischilii*, *Pogonarthria squarrosa*, *Sporobolus fimbriatus*, *Trichoneura grandiglumis*, *Triraphis andropogonoides*. *Herbs*: *Selago densiflora* (d), *Berkheya onopordifolia* var. *onopordifolia*, *Blepharis integrifolia* var. *clarkei*, *Chamaesyce inaequilatera*, *Commelina africana*, *Dicoma macrocephala*, *Gazania krebsiana* subsp. *krebsiana*, *Geigeria ornativa*, *Harpagophytum procumbens*, *Helichrysum caespitium*, *Heliotropium ciliatum*, *Hermannia comosa*, *H. tomentosa*, *Indigofera alternans*, *Lactuca dregeana*, *Lotononis listii*, *Monsonia burkeana*, *Nolletia ciliaris*, *Pollichia campestris*. *Geophytic Herbs*: *Oxalis depressa* (d), *Haemanthus humilis* subsp. *humilis*. *Succulent Herb*: *Tripteris aghillana* var. *integrifolia*. Low

*Shrubs: Chrysocoma ciliata (d), Felicia filifolia subsp. filifolia (d), Pentzia globosa (d), P. incana (d), Amphiglossa triflora, Anthospermum rigidum subsp. pumilum, Asparagus striatus, Felicia muricata, Gnidia polycephala, Helichrysum dregeanum, Nenax microphylla, Osteospermum leptolobum, Polygala hottentotta, Selago saxatilis.*  
*Succulent Shrub: Hertia pallen.*

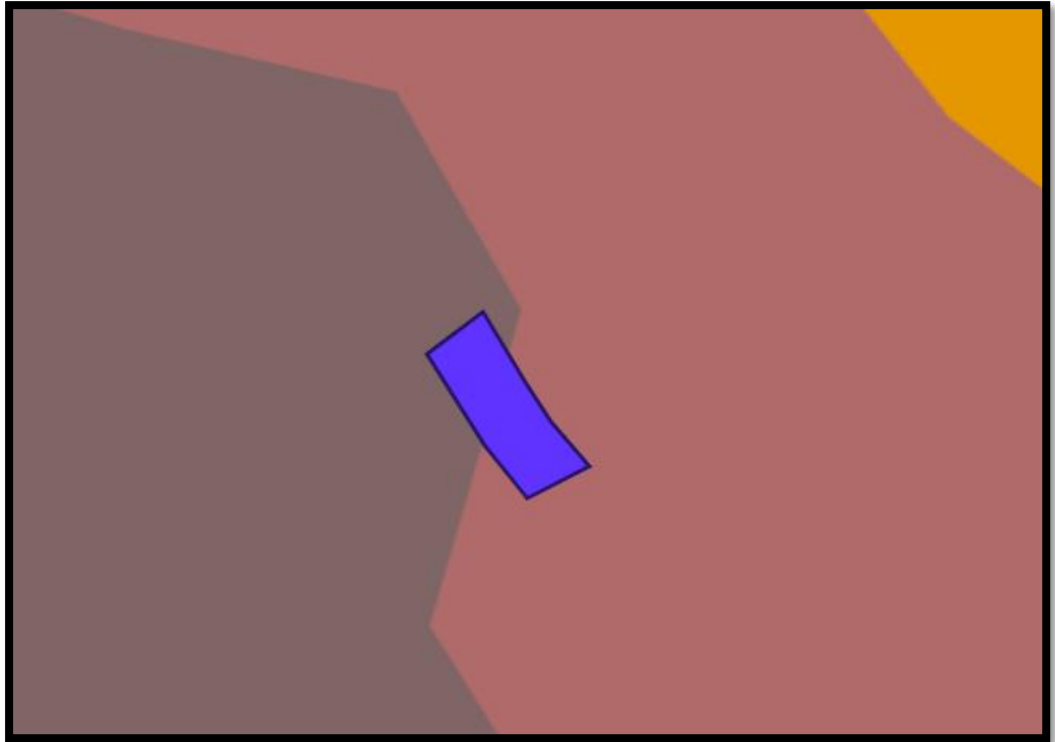


Figure 13: National vegetation cover map showing the mining area within the Beaufort West Gamka Karoo (NKI 1) (light brown) Upper Karoo Hardeveld (NKu 2) (dark brown). (Image obtained from BGIS Map Viewer – National Vegetation Map).

## **FAUNA**

Various small mammals and reptiles occur are likely to on the property. The fauna at the site will not be impacted by the proposed mining activities as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. Workers should be educated and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. At this stage no resident protected or red data faunal species could be identified within the earmarked footprint. The study area falls over a property that is noted to be operational game farms, should this mining permit be granted farm owner will be consulted prior to commencement of any activities to ensure that safety of animals and workers. Workers will be informed and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. No poaching or hunting of animals will be allowed. All construction vehicles must adhere to a low speed limit (<40km/h) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises. Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.

## **HUMAN ENVIRONMENT:**

### **CULTURAL AND HERITAGE ENVIRONMENT**

The South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) compiled the Palaeontological (fossil) Sensitivity Map (PSM) to guide developers, heritage officers and practitioners in screening paleontologically sensitive areas at the onset of a project. When the footprint of the earmarked mining area is placed on the PSM, the SAHRIS palaeo-sensitivity map (see <https://sahris.sahra.org.za/map/palaeo>) indicates that a portion of the footprint of the proposed quarry is located in an area of high palaeontological sensitivity (as presented in the figure below). The sensitivity of the southern portion of the site is rated by SAHRIS as insignificant.

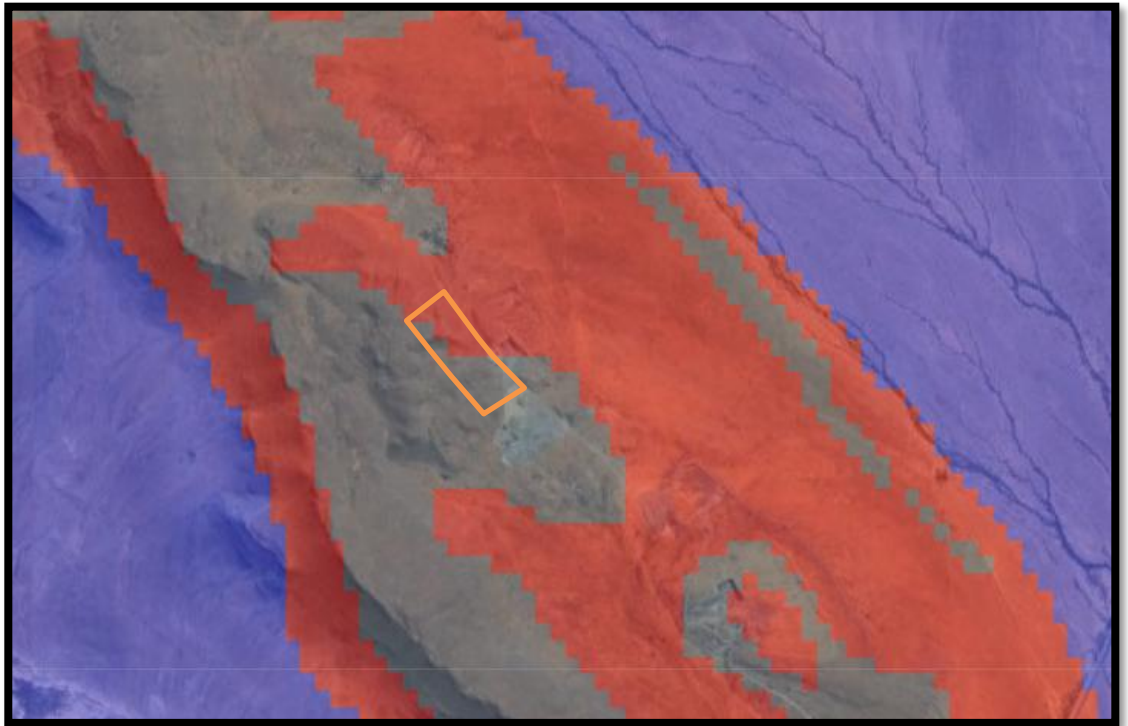


Figure 14: Screenshot from the SAHRIS palaeo-sensitivity map showing the location of the proposed mining area (orange polygon) straddling an area of high (red) and insignificant/zero (no colour) palaeontological sensitivity (Source: <https://sahris.sahra.org.za/map/palaeo>).

## **SOCIO-ECONOMIC ENVIRONMENT**

*(Information extracted from the Beaufort West Municipality Integrated Development Plan – 2022-2027)*

The proposed mining area is located within ward 2 of the Beaufort West Local Municipality. Beaufort West Municipality is one of the three (3) local municipalities that comprise Central Karoo District. Beaufort West is the economic, political and administrative heart of the Central Karoo. Located 32°21'S 22°35'E, about 460 km North East of Cape Town, the town was founded on the farm Hoogvlakte in 1818. The municipal area covers 16 330.10 km<sup>2</sup> and is structured into 7 Wards.

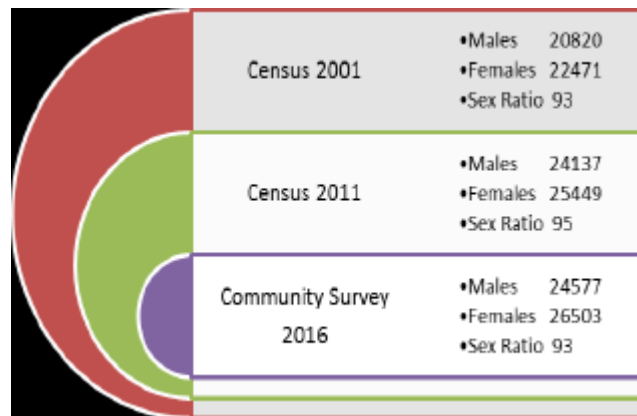
It's noteworthy to mention that the SEP-LG 2021 for Beaufort West Municipality indicates that the population has increased from 51 080 (2016 Community Survey) to 51 177 in 2021.

According to Census 2011, the Afrikaans language is spoken by more than 40 000 people, i.e. 80% plus, of the people residing in the municipal area, with IsiXhosa spoken by about 5000 residents. In 2001, the number of Afrikaans speaking residents were 37 000 which is about 85% of the total population. The languages most spoken in the household are; Afrikaans (83.0%), IsiXhosa (13.1%) and English (1.9%).

Afrikaans has remained the predominant language spoken by households since census 2001.

### Gender Profile

The female population over time has consistently been greater than that of the male population. The sex ratio indicates the number of males to every 100 females within the municipality has only increased in 2011 but declined back to its 2001 figure in 2016. Within 2001, 2011 and 2016, those aged 0-4, 5-9 and 15-19 have consistently had a higher male to female ratio. In 2016 however there was also subsequently and increase in the male to female ratio of persons aged 20-24 and 45-49.



*Figure 15: Gender distribution (Information extracted from the Beaufort West Municipality Integrated Development Plan – 2022/2027) - Source: Statistics South Africa: Community Survey, 2016.*

### Economic Profile

As per the SEP-LG 2021, it is reported that in 2019, the economy of Beaufort West municipal area was valued at R2.231 billion (current prices) and employed 12 552 people. Historical trends between 2015 and 2019 indicate that the municipal area realised an average annual growth rate of -0.1 per cent. While the primary sector and the secondary sector contracted between 2015 and 2019 at (-2.8 per cent) and (-0.3 per cent, the tertiary sectors grew at an average of 0.5 in the same period. The economy is overall estimated to have contracted by 4.8 per cent in 2020 and to have shed 725 jobs.

In terms of sectoral contribution, the general government (R500.3 million), transport, storage and communication (R382.2 million) and the wholesale and retail trade, catering and accommodation (R346.34 million) sectors were the main contributors to growth in the municipal area. The latter two sectors are however both expected to contract in 2019 (-1.2 and -0.2 per cent respectively) while the general government

sector is expected to grow by 1.0 per cent. The wholesale and retail trade, catering and accommodation sector is the biggest contributor to overall employment in the municipal area (3 169) and is expected to shed 280 jobs in 2020. The general government sector, which is the third largest contributor to overall employment (2 319), is expected to create the 26 new jobs.

Although the agriculture, forestry and fishing sector contributed the second largest contributor to jobs 2 423 it is expected to shed 73 jobs in 2020. It is estimated that this sector had the largest GDP growth (10.8 per cent) in 2020.

### Education Levels

Education remains one of the key avenues through which the state is involved in the economy. In preparing individuals for future engagement in the labour market, policy choices and decisions in the sphere of education play a critical role in determining the extent to which future economic and poverty reduction plans can be realised. Beaufort West's matric outcomes dropped from 79.2 per cent in 2018 to 70.9 per cent in 2020.

Beaufort West's matric outcomes increased significantly from 71, 71% percent in 2020 to 83, 65% percent in 2021.

### Employment Profile

The unemployment rate in Beaufort West municipality has decreased by 12.9% in the 10 years between censuses. Although there has been a significant drop in the unemployment rate and the number of persons employed has increased, the municipality's 2011 unemployment rate is still higher than the district and provincial unemployment rates of 23, 1% and 21, 4% respectively.

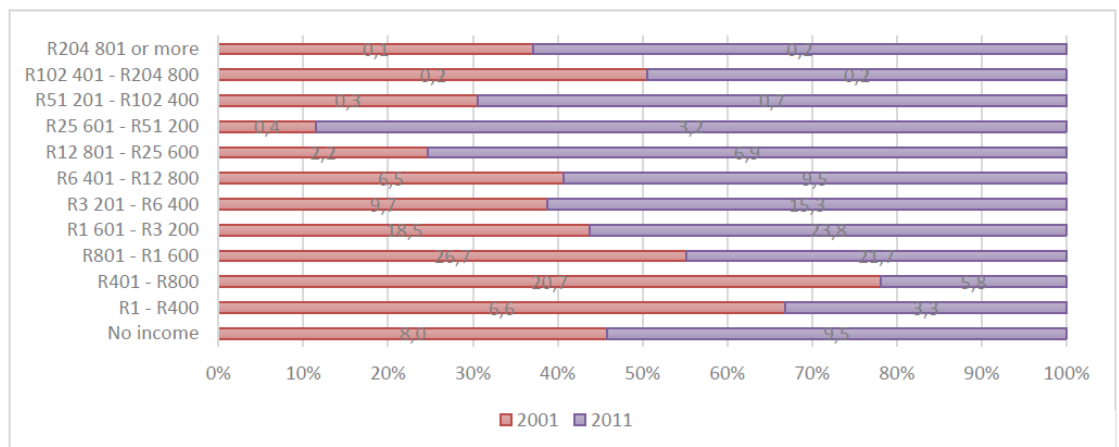


Figure 16: Income levels (Information extracted from the Beaufort West Municipality Integrated Development Plan – 2022/27) - Source: Statistics South Africa: Census 2001 - 2011.

The above graph demonstrates an increase in monthly household income in the census 2011. While those earning a monthly income of R1600 and below has shown a decline since 2001, we see an increase in those households earning R1601 to R102400 per month. This indicates that more households have members who are employed thus not solely dependent on social grants as compared to households in 2001 increase in those households earning R1601 to R102400 per month. This indicates that more households have members who are employed thus not solely dependent on social grants as compared to households in 2001.

**(b) Description of the current land uses**

A portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal 120, Registration Division of Beaufort West, Western Cape province is situated in a rural setting. The N1 forms the south western boundary of the farm. A portion of Portion 4 of Farm Waaikraal 120, Beaufort West, has existing consent use approval for a quarry granted by the Beaufort West Municipality.

The main land use of the surrounding properties is agricultural. The following table provides a description of the land uses and/or prominent features that currently occur within a 500 m radius of the proposed site:

*Table 10: Land uses and/or prominent features that occur within 500 m radius*

LAND USE CHARACTER	YES	NO	DESCRIPTION
Natural area	YES	-	The study area is surrounded by natural areas used for agricultural (small holding) purposes.
Low density residential	-	NO	
Medium density residential	-	NO	
High density residential	-	NO	
Informal residential	-	NO	
Retail commercial & warehousing	-	NO	
Light industrial	-	NO	
Medium industrial	-	NO	
Heavy industrial	-	NO	
Power station	-	NO	
High voltage power line	-	NO	
Office/consulting room	-	NO	
Military or police base / station / compound	-	NO	
Spoil heap or slimes dam	-	NO	
Quarry, gravel or borrow pit	YES	-	The footprint of the proposed mining area extends over an area previously used for gravel mining purposes due the adjacent mining area that does not overlap with the current proposed footprint.
Dam or reservoir		NO	
Hospital/medical centre	-	NO	
School/ crèche	-	NO	
Tertiary education facility		NO	
Church	-	NO	
Old age home	-	NO	
Sewage treatment plant	-	NO	
Train station or shunting yard	-	NO	
Railway line	-	NO	The nearest railway line is located ±3.4 km from the earmarked area.
Major road (4 lanes or more)	YES		The N1 passes the site on the south eastern side
Airport	-	NO	
Harbour	-	NO	
Sport facilities	-	NO	
Golf course	-	NO	
Polo fields	-	NO	

LAND USE CHARACTER	YES	NO	DESCRIPTION
Filling station	-	NO	
Landfill or waste treatment site	-	NO	
Plantation	-	NO	
Agriculture	-	NO	The proposed footprint forms part of an agricultural active farm however the area has existing consent use approval for a quarry granted by the Beaufort West Municipality.
River, stream or wetland		NO	
Nature conservation area	-	NO	
Mountain, hill or ridge	YES	-	The mining area is located on a low hill (koppie).
Museum	-	NO	
Historical building	-	NO	
Protected Area	-	NO	
Graveyard	-	NO	
Archaeological site	-	NO	
Other land uses (describe)	-	NO	

**(c) Description of specific environmental features and infrastructure on the site.**

**SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES**

**SITE SPECIFIC TOPOGRAPHY**

Extremely irregular to slightly undulating plains covered with dwarf spiny shrubland dominated by Karoo dwarf shrubs (e.g. *Chrysocoma ciliata*, *Eriocephalus ericoides*) with rare low trees (e.g. *Euclea undu-Jata*). Dense stands of drought-resistant grasses (*Stipagrostis*, *Aristida*) cover (especially after abundant rains) broad sandy bottom lands. The figure below shows the elevation loss from the proposed mining footprint to the town of Beaufort West to be 146 m over 29.5 km.

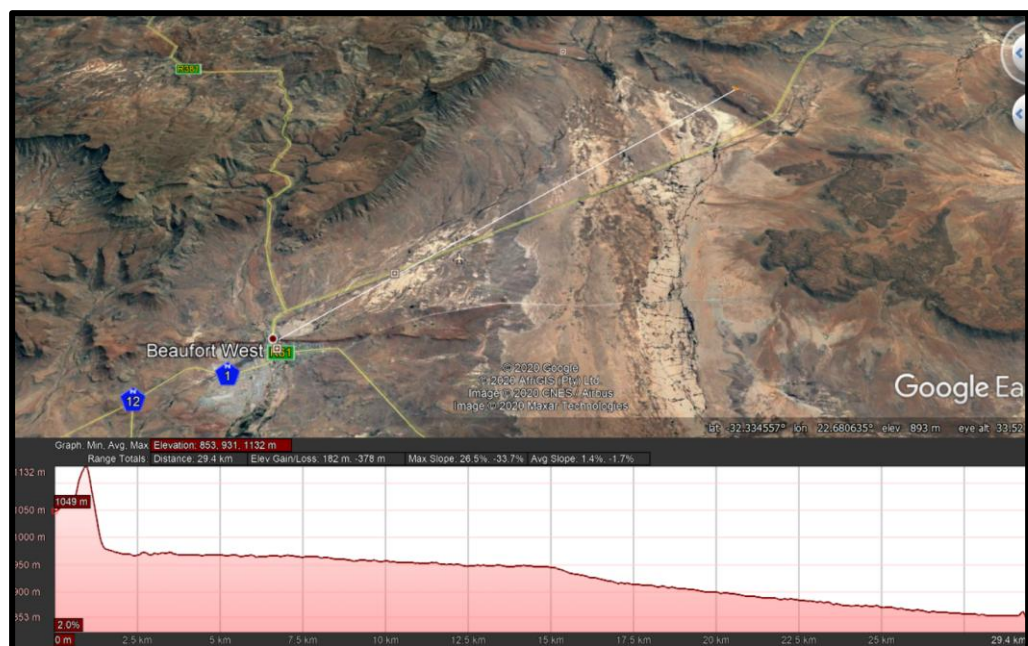
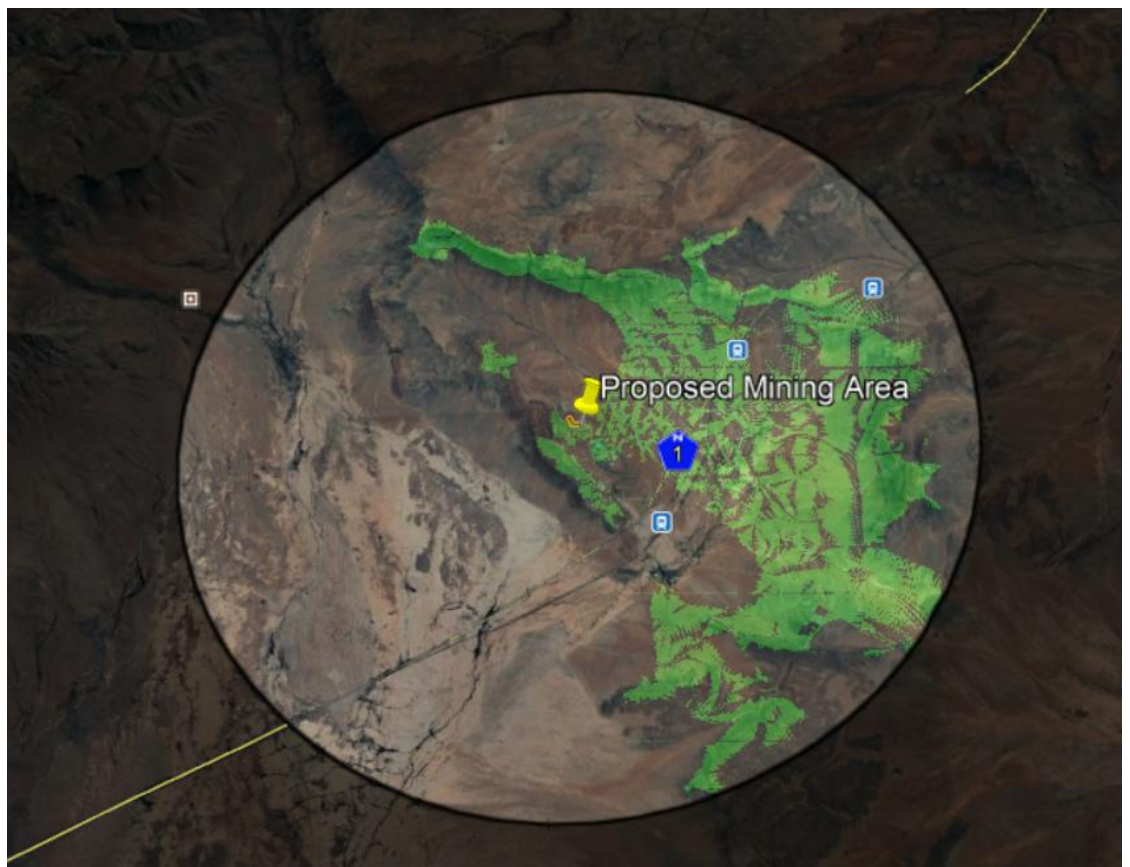


Figure 17: Elevation profile of the proposed mining footprint (Image obtained from Google Earth).

## SITE SPECIFIC VISUAL CHARACTERISTICS

The proposed mining activities will be visible within close proximity ( $\pm 1$  km radius) of the footprint. However, as one moves away the visibility of the area greatly lessens. The figure below shows the viewshed analysis for the footprint within a  $\pm 10$  km radius. The green shaded areas show the positions from where the mining area will be visible. From this analysis it is proposed that the visual impact of the proposed gravel mining operation will be of low significance, especially as no permanent structures will be constructed. The small scale of the proposed operation, and the mining area will be located between two hills in order to minimize the visual impact. Should the Applicant successfully rehabilitate the mining area (upon closure), no residual visual impact is expected upon closure of the mine.



*Figure 18: Viewshed of the proposed mining footprint where the green shaded areas shows the positions from where the mining area will be visible. (Image obtained from Google Earth).*

## SITE SPECIFIC AIR AND NOISE QUALITY

The residential dwellings nearest to the proposed footprint is approximately 2 km away (south). Currently the air quality of the study area is mainly impacted on by the surrounding traffic on the N1 passing the site.

Emission into the atmosphere is controlled by the National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act, 2004. The proposed mining activity does not trigger an

application in terms of the said act. The proposed activity will contribute the emissions mechanical mining equipment to the receiving environment for the duration of the operational phase. Should the permit holder implement the mitigation measures proposed in this document and the EMPR the impact on the air quality of the surrounding environment is deemed to be of low significance and compatible with the current land use.

The potential impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the traffic of the surrounding area. The distance of the proposed mining area from residential infrastructure further lessens the potential noise impact.

### **SITE SPECIFIC GEOLOGY AND SOIL**

The site-specific geology is representative of the regional geology and soil as described earlier in this report. The geology of the study area comprises mostly primitive, skeletal soils in rocky areas developing over sedimentary rocks such as mudstones and arenites of the Adelaide Subgroup of the Karoo Supergroup and to a lesser extent also the Eccca Group (Waterford and Volksrust Formations) as well as Jurassic dolerite sills and dykes and subsummit positions of mesas and butts with dolerite boulder slopes. Almost entirely lb land type.

Mudstones and sandstones of the Beaufort Group (Adelaide Subgroup) with some Eccca (Fort Brown Formation) shales supporting very shallow and stony soils of the Glenrosa and/or Mispah forms, typical of Fe land type.

The aggregate / gravel of the study area is aggregate highly suitable for construction purposes. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; upon which the loosened material will be transported to a processing area (inside mining boundary) where it will be crushed and screened to various sized stockpiles, before being sold and transported from site to clients.

### **SITE SPECIFIC HYDROLOGY**

The proposed project does not require a Water Use Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998). As mentioned earlier, the proposed mining footprint extends into an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities, and no activity will take place in or within 1km radius of any water bodies. Any water required for the implementation of the project will be bought from a registered source and transported to on site.



Figure 19: Satellite view showing 1km radius from the position of mining footprint. (Image obtained from Google Earth)

### **SITE SPECIFIC MINING AND BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION AREAS**

As mentioned earlier, when the mining footprint is layered over the Mining and Biodiversity Map, it falls over an area of moderate biodiversity importance with a corresponding rating of moderate risk for mining. The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline's describes areas of moderate risk biodiversity importance as: "*These areas are of moderate biodiversity value.*" The guideline notes that environmental screening, the EIA and specialists should focus on confirming the presence and significance of biodiversity features and provide a site-specific basis on which to apply the mitigation hierarchy to inform regulatory decision-making.

### **SITE SPECIFIC GROUNDCOVER**

The National Web-based Environmental Screening Tool has characterized the Plant Sensitivity Theme to be of medium sensitivity. The site-specific groundcover of the proposed mining area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. Overall, the site reflects a landscape significantly altered by excavation activities, with reduced vegetation cover in disturbed areas and remnant natural veld persisting along the periphery. As mentioned earlier, the area falls within an Other Natural Area (ONA), indicating that it remains relatively natural but is not

classified as a sensitive, protected, or high-value ecosystem. Nevertheless, it is recommended that a pre-construction walk-through of the development footprint or project site be conducted to identify any individual plant species of conservation concern that may be present. Any trans locatable protected species must be relocated to a suitable and similar habitat where these plants can grow without any disturbance.

### **SITE SPECIFIC FAUNA**

Various small mammals and reptiles occur are likely to on the property. The fauna at the site will not be impacted by the proposed mining activities as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. Workers should be educated and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. At this stage no resident protected or red data faunal species could be identified within the earmarked footprint. The study area falls over a property that is noted to be operational game farms, should this mining permit be granted farm owner will be consulted prior to commencement of any activities to ensure that safety of animals and workers. Workers will be informed and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. No poaching or hunting of animals will be allowed. All construction vehicles must adhere to a low speed limit (<40km/h) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises. Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.

### **SITE SPECIFIC CULTURAL AND HERITAGE ENVIRONMENT**

As per the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the proposed mining area is entirely underlain by massive intrusive dolerite with no obvious exposure of sedimentary bedrocks of the Lower Beaufort Group (Karoo Supergroup). A substantial portion of the area is already disturbed by previous mining activities. The Karoo dolerite bedrocks to be exploited by the planned mining are entirely unfossiliferous while fossil preservation within any adjacent sedimentary country rocks has almost certainly been compromised by thermal metamorphism (baking) and pneumatolysis by hot circulating fluids during intrusion. No fossil remains were recorded during a previous site visit to the adjoining dolerite mining area by Almond & Tusenius (2021). Late Caenozoic superficial sediments (viz. eluvial dolerite rubble, stream alluvium, skeletal soils) are generally of Very Low palaeosensitivity

The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the specialist, the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development.

Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol (as described in the table below) will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.

Table 11: Chance Find Procedure

<b>Province &amp; region:</b>	Western Cape: Central Karoo District Municipality	
<b>Responsible Heritage Resources Agency</b>	Heritage Western Cape (3 <sup>rd</sup> Floor Protea Assurance Building, 142 Longmarket Street, Green Market Square, Cape Town 8000. Private Bag X9067, Cape Town 8001. Tel: 021 483 5959 Email: ceoheritage@westerncape.gov.za)	
<b>Rock unit(s)</b>	Karoo dolerite, Teekloof Formation (Lower Beaufort Group), Late Caenozoic alluvium / eluvium / soils.	
<b>Potential fossils</b>	Fossil vertebrate bones, teeth, trace fossils, trackways, petrified wood, plant-rich beds in the Lower Beaufort Group bedrocks. Fossil mammal bones, teeth, horn cores, freshwater molluscs, plant material, trace fossils in Late Caenozoic sediments.	
<b>ECO protocol</b>	1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately ( <i>N.B.</i> safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.	
	2. Record key data while fossil remains are still <i>in situ</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo</li> <li>• Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface</li> <li>• Photograph fossil(s) <i>in situ</i> with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)</li> </ul>	
	3. If feasible to leave fossils <i>in situ</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> <li>• Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume</li> </ul>	3. If <i>not</i> feasible to leave fossils <i>in situ</i> (emergency procedure only): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Carefully</i> remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)</li> <li>• Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale</li> <li>• Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags</li> <li>• Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist</li> <li>• Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> </ul>
	4. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.	
	5. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency	
<b>Specialist palaeontologist</b>	Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage Resources Agency minimum standards.	

## SITE SPECIFIC INFRASTRUCTURE

There is only an existing quarry directly adjacent to the eastern boundary of the site. The following is located within close proximity:

- An existing SANRAL quarry is located 900m south east of the site.
- Guest lodge on the farm is located 2km south of the site
- The N1 – 2.5km towards the south of the site.

None of the above-mentioned listed infrastructure falls within the site area and will therefore not be affected.

### (d) Environmental and current land use map.

(Show all environmental and current land use features)

The environmental and current land use map is attached as Appendix D.

### v) Impacts and risks identified including the nature, significance, consequence, extent, duration and probability of the impacts, including the degree to which these impacts

(Provide a list of the potential impacts identified of the activities described in the initial site layout that will be undertaken, as informed by both the typical known impacts of such activities, and as informed by the consultations with affected parties together with the significance, probability, and duration of the impacts. Please indicate the extent to which they can be reversed, the extent to which they may cause irreplaceable loss of resources, and can be avoided, managed or mitigated.)

The following potential impacts were identified of each main activity in each phase of the proposed project. The significance rating was determined using the methodology as explained under *vi) Methodology Used in Determining and Ranking the Significance*. The impact rating listed below was determined for each impact **prior** to bringing the proposed mitigation measures into consideration. The degree of mitigation indicates the possibility of partial, full or no mitigation of the identified impact.

### SITE ESTABLISHMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT:

Alteration of the agricultural sense of place

						Significance					
Severity	Duration	Extent	Consequence	Probability	Frequency	Likelihood	Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
Rating: Medium			Site Layout Alternative 1			Degree of Mitigation: None					
2	2	2	2	4	5	4.5	9				

Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1	4	1	2.3	5	5	5	5	10	15	20	
4.9						4.9	5 - 9.9	14.9	19.9	25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	1	2.3	5	5	5	<b>11.5</b>				

Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1	1	2	1.6	5	5	5	5	10	15	20	
4.9						4.9	5 - 9.9	14.9	19.9	25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	1	2	1.6	5	5	5	<b>8</b>				

Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
2	3	2	3.3	4	2	3	3	10	15	20	
4.9						4.9	5 - 9.9	14.9	19.9	25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	3.3	4	2	3	<b>9.9</b>				

Potential impact on archaeological artefacts

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
2	5	5	4	1	1	1	1	10	15	20	
4.9						4.9	5 - 9.9	14.9	19.9	25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	5	5	4	1	1	1	<b>4</b>				

New job opportunities as a result of the mining operation (Positive Impact)

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
4	4	5	4.6	5	5	5	5	10	15	20	
4.9						4.9	5 - 9.9	14.9	19.9	25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	5	4.6	5	5	5	<b>23</b>				

**STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING OF TOPSOIL AND/OR OVERBURDEN:**

Visual intrusion caused by mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: N/A</b>					
2	4	4	3.3	5	5	5	<b>16.5</b>				

Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	4	3	3.5	<b>9.1</b>				

Dust nuisance as a result of the disturbance of soil

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	4	4	4	<b>9.2</b>				

Noise nuisance generated by earthmoving machinery

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	4	4	4	<b>9.2</b>				

Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with weeds or invader plant species

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	2	3	5	2	3.5	<b>10.5</b>				

Potential impact on local fauna due to disturbance and loss of available habitat

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	4	4	4	<b>9.2</b>				

Potential erosion of denuded areas

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	4	4	4	<b>9.2</b>				

Potential contamination of footprint area and surface runoff as a result of hydrocarbon spillages

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	4	4	4	<b>9.2</b>				

**DRILLING AND BLASTING:**

Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	1	3	4	3	3.5	<b>10.5</b>				

Dust nuisance caused by blasting activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	1	3	4	3	3.5	<b>10.5</b>				

Noise nuisance as a result of blasting

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent					Probability	Frequency	Low	Low-Medium	Medium
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	2	3	4	3	3.5	<b>10.5</b>				

**EXCAVATION, LOADING AND HAULING TO THE PROCESSING PLANT**

Dust nuisance due to excavation and from loading and vehicles transporting the material

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent					Probability	Frequency	Low	Low-Medium	Medium
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	5	4.5	<b>11.7</b>				

Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent					Probability	Frequency	Low	Low-Medium	Medium
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	5	4.5	<b>11.7</b>				

Unsafe working environment for employees

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent					Probability	Frequency	Low	Low-Medium	Medium
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	1	3	4	5	4.5	<b>13.5</b>				

Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills and/or littering

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent					Probability	Frequency	Low	Low-Medium	Medium
							1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	5	4.5	<b>11.7</b>				

Potential impact on areas of palaeontological concern

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	5	4.3	2	1	1.5	<b>6.5</b>				

Facilitation of erosion due to mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	4	3	3.5	<b>9.1</b>				

**PROCESSING, STOCKPILING AND TRANSPORTING OF MATERIAL:**

Dust nuisance generated at the processing plant

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	5	5	5	<b>13</b>				

Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	5	4.5	<b>11.7</b>				

Potential contamination of environment due to improper waste management

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	4	4	4	<b>10.4</b>				

Degradation of the access road

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	4	2	3	4	5	4.5	<b>13.5</b>				

**CUMULATIVE IMPACTS:**

Impact the broad-scale ecological processes

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	4	4	3	1	2	<b>8</b>				

Impact on existing infrastructure as a direct result of the mining operation

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	5	4.3	3	3	3	<b>12.9</b>				

**SLOPING AND LANDSCAPING DURING REHABILITATION:**

Safety risk posed by un-sloped areas

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	5	1	3	4	5	4.5	<b>13.5</b>				

Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	5	1	3	4	3	3.5	<b>10.5</b>				

### Infestation of the reinstated areas by weeds and invader plant species

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	5	3	3.6	5	5	5	<b>18</b>				

### Potential impact associated with litter/waste left at the mining area

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	5	1	3	4	5	4.5	<b>10.5</b>				

### Return of the mining area to agricultural use upon closure (Positive Impact)

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
3	5	1	3	5	5	5	<b>15</b>				

#### vi) Methodology used in determining and ranking the nature, significance, consequences, extent, duration and probability of potential environmental impacts and risks;

(Describe how the significance, probability, and duration of the aforesaid identified impacts that were identified through the consultation process was determined in order to decide the extent to which the initial site layout needs revision.)

#### Methodology for the assessment of the potential environmental, social and cultural impacts

#### DEFINITIONS AND CONCEPTS:

#### Environmental significance:

The concept of significance is at the core of impact identification, evaluation and decision-making. The concept remains largely undefined and there is no international consensus on a single definition. The following common elements are recognised from the various interpretations:

- Environmental significance is a value judgement
- The degree of environmental significance depends on the nature of the impact
- The importance is rated in terms of both biophysical and socio-economic values
- Determining significance involves the amount of change to the environment perceived to be acceptable to affected communities.

Significance can be differentiated into impact magnitude and impact significance. Impact magnitude is the measurable change (i.e. intensity, duration and likelihood). Impact significance is the value placed on the change by different affected parties (i.e. level of acceptability) (DEAT (2002) Impact Significance, Integrated Environmental Management, Information Series 5).

The concept of risk has two dimensions, namely the consequence of an event or set of circumstances, and the likelihood of particular consequences being realised (Environment Australia (1999) Environmental Risk Management).

### **Impact**

The positive or negative effects on human well-being and / or the environment.

### **Consequence**

The intermediate or final outcome of an event or situation OR it is the result, on the environment, of an event.

### **Likelihood**

A qualitative term covering both probability and frequency.

### **Frequency**

The number of occurrences of a defined event in a given time or rate.

### **Probability**

The likelihood of a specific outcome measured by the ratio of a specific outcome to the total number of possible outcomes.

### **Environment**

Surroundings in which an organisation operates, including air, water, land, natural resources, flora, fauna, humans and their interrelation (ISO 14004, 1996).

### **Methodology that will be used**

The environmental significance assessment methodology is based on the following determination:

$$\text{Environmental Significance} = \text{Overall Consequence} \times \text{Overall Likelihood}$$

### **Determination of Overall Consequence**

Consequence analysis is a mixture of quantitative and qualitative information and the outcome can be positive or negative. Several factors can be used to determine consequence. For the purpose of determining the environmental significance in terms of consequence, the following factors were chosen: **Severity/Intensity, Duration and Extent/Spatial Scale**. Each factor is assigned a rating of 1 to 5, as described in the tables below.

### **Determination of Severity / Intensity**

**Severity** relates to the nature of the event, aspect or impact to the environment and describes how severe the aspects impact on the biophysical and socio-economic environment.

The table below will be used to obtain an overall rating for severity, taking into consideration the various criteria.

Table 12: Table to be used to obtain an overall rating of severity, taking into consideration the various criteria.

Type of criteria	Rating				
	1	2	3	4	5
Quantitative	0-20%	21-40%	41-60%	61-80%	81-100%
Qualitative	Insignificant / Non-harmful	Small / Potentially harmful	Significant/ Harmful	Great/ Very harmful	Disastrous Extremely harmful
Social/ Community response	Acceptable / I&AP satisfied	Slightly tolerable / Possible objections	Intolerable/ Sporadic complaints	Unacceptable / Widespread complaints	Totally unacceptable / Possible legal action
Irreversibility	Very low cost to mitigate/ High potential to mitigate impacts to level of insignificance/ Easily reversible	Low cost to mitigate	Substantial cost to mitigate/ Potential to mitigate impacts/ Potential to reverse impact	High cost to mitigate	Prohibitive cost to mitigate/ Little or no mechanism to mitigate impact Irreversible
Biophysical (Air quality, water quantity and quality, waste production, fauna and flora)	Insignificant change / deterioration or disturbance	Moderate change / deterioration or disturbance	Significant change / deterioration or disturbance	Very significant change / deterioration or disturbance	Disastrous change / deterioration or disturbance

### **Determination of Duration**

Duration refers to the amount of time that the environment will be affected by the event, risk or impact, if no intervention e.g. remedial action takes place.

Table 13: Criteria for the rating of duration.

Rating	Description
1	Up to ONE MONTH
2	ONE MONTH to THREE MONTHS (QUARTER)
3	THREE MONTHS to ONE YEAR
4	ONE to TEN YEARS
5	Beyond TEN YEARS

### **Determination of Extent/Spatial Scale**

Extent or spatial scale is the area affected by the event, aspect or impact.

Table 14: Criteria for the rating of extent / spatial scale.

Rating	Description
1	Immediate, fully contained area
2	Surrounding area
3	Within Business Unit area of responsibility
4	Within the farm/neighbouring farm area
5	Regional, National, International

### **Determination of Overall Consequence**

Overall consequence is determined by adding the factors determined above and summarized below, and then dividing the sum by 3.

Table 15: Example of calculating overall consequence.

Consequence	Rating
Severity	Example 4
Duration	Example 2
Extent	Example 4
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>10</b>
<b>TOTAL CONSEQUENCE:</b> (Subtotal divided by 3)	<b>3.3</b>

### **Determination of Likelihood:**

The determination of likelihood is a combination of Frequency and Probability. Each factor is assigned a rating of 1 to 5, as described below and in tables 6 and 7.

### **Determination of Frequency**

Frequency refers to how often the specific activity, related to the event, aspect or impact, is undertaken.

Table 16: Criteria for the rating of frequency.

Rating	Description
1	Once a year or once/more during operation
2	Once/more in 6 Months
3	Once/more a Month
4	Once/more a Week
5	Daily

### **Determination of Probability**

Probability refers to how often the activity or aspect has an impact on the environment.

Table 17: Criteria for the rating of probability.

Rating	Description
1	Almost never / almost impossible
2	Very seldom / highly unlikely
3	Infrequent / unlikely / seldom
4	Often / regularly / likely / possible

Rating	Description
5	Daily / highly likely / definitely

***Overall Likelihood***

Overall likelihood is calculated by adding the factors determined above and summarised below, and then dividing the sum by 2.

Table 18: Example of calculating overall likelihood.

Consequence	Rating
Frequency	Example 4
Probability	Example 2
<b>SUBTOTAL</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>TOTAL LIKELIHOOD</b> (Subtotal divided by 2)	<b>3</b>

**Determination of Overall Environmental Significance:**

The multiplication of overall consequence with overall likelihood will provide the environmental significance, which is a number that will then fall into a range of **LOW, LOW-MEDIUM, MEDIUM, MEDIUM-HIGH** or **HIGH**, as shown in the table below.

Table 19: Determination of overall environmental significance.

Significance or Risk	Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
Overall Consequence X Overall Likelihood	1 – 4.9	5 – 9.9	10 – 14.9	15 – 19.9	20 – 25

**Qualitative description or magnitude of Environmental Significance**

This description is qualitative and is an indication of the nature or magnitude of the Environmental Significance. It also guides the prioritisations and decision making process associated with this event, aspect or impact.

Table 20: Description of environmental significance and related action required.

Significance	Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
Impact Magnitude	Impact is of very low order and therefore likely to have very little real effect. Acceptable.	Impact is of low order and therefore likely to have little real effect. Acceptable.	Impact is real, and potentially substantial in relation to other impacts. Can pose a risk to company	Impact is real and substantial in relation to other impacts. Pose a risk to the company. Unacceptable	Impact is of the highest order possible. Unacceptable. Fatal flaw.
Action Required	Maintain current management measures. Where possible improve.	Maintain current management measures. Implement monitoring and evaluate to determine potential increase in risk. Where possible improve	Implement monitoring. Investigate mitigation measures and improve management measures to reduce risk, where possible.	Improve management measures to reduce risk.	Implement significant mitigation measures or implement alternatives.

Based on the above, the significance rating scale has been determined as follows:

High                      Of the highest order possible within the bounds of impacts which could occur. In the case of negative impacts, there would be no possible mitigation and / or remedial activity to offset the impact at the spatial or time scale for

	which it was predicted. In the case of positive impacts, there is no real alternative to achieving the benefit.
Medium-High	Impacts of a substantial order. In the case of negative impacts, mitigation and / or remedial activity would be feasible but difficult, expensive, time-consuming or some combination of these. In the case of positive impacts, other means of achieving this benefit would be feasible, but these would be more difficult, expensive, time-consuming or some combination of these.
Medium	Impact would be real but not substantial within the bounds of those, which could occur. In the case of negative impacts, mitigation and / or remedial activity would be both feasible and fairly easily possible, In case of positive impacts; other means of achieving these benefits would be about equal in time, cost and effort.
Low-Medium	Impact would be of a low order and with little real effect. In the case of negative impacts, mitigation and / or remedial activity would be either easily achieved or little would be required, or both. In case of positive impacts alternative means for achieving this benefit would likely be easier, cheaper, more effective, less time-consuming, or some combination of these.
Low	Impact would be negligible. In the case of negative impacts, almost no mitigation and or remedial activity would be needed, and any minor steps, which might be needed, would be easy, cheap and simple. In the case of positive impacts, alternative means would almost all likely be better, in one or a number of ways, than this means of achieving the benefit
Insignificant	There would be a no impact at all – not even a very low impact on the system or any of its parts.

**vii) The positive and negative impacts that the proposed activity (in terms of the initial site layout) and alternatives will have on the environment and the community that may be affected.**

(Provide a discussion in terms of advantages and disadvantages of the initial site layout compared to alternative layout options to accommodate concerns raised by affected parties)

The environmental impact assessment process assessed the feasibility of the proposed site alternative to identify fatal flaws that are deemed as severe as to prevent the activity continuing, or warrant another site or project alternative. The outcome of the assessment showed that should the mitigation measures and monitoring programmes proposed in this document be implemented, no fatal flaws could be identified that prevents the activity continuing. In light of the above, the mining proposal was updated to incorporate the project related mitigation measures and monitoring programmes identified during the assessment process. The preferred development footprint was subsequently finalized and is depicted on the attached site activities plan (Appendix C). The aggregate / gravel mining area can be moved to various alternative sites within close proximity of the proposed mining area but will

entail disturbing a greenfield area. However, the proposed mining area was identified as the preferred and only viable site alternative as it entails the mining of an area previously disturbed by aggregate / gravel mining purposes. In light of this, S1 was identified during the assessment phase of the environmental impact assessment, by the Applicant and project team due to the following:

- The proposed area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the landowner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not result in the loss of high-potential agricultural land for the landowner. This site was identified as the only viable alternative, as its low agricultural potential makes it the most suitable option for development.
- Access to the proposed mining area is possible via the existing access road with a formal (existing) entrance onto the N1.
- The quality of the aggregate / gravel, in the earmarked area, complies with the requirements of the Applicant's clients and/or contracts.

#### **PROJECT ASSOCIATED POSITIVE IMPACTS:**

- Possible work opportunities to local residents;
- Return of the mining area to agricultural use upon closure of the project; and
- Diversification of the land use of the property.

#### **POTENTIAL NEGATIVE IMPACTS:**

##### **Site establishment & infrastructure development**

- Alteration of the agricultural sense of place;
- Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining;
- Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment;
- Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area;
- Potential impact on archaeological artefacts;

##### **Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and/or overburden:**

- Visual intrusion caused by mining activities;
- Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling;
- Dust nuisance as a result of the disturbance of soil;
- Noise nuisance generated by earthmoving machinery;
- Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with weeds or invader plant species;
- Potential impact on local fauna due to disturbance and loss of available habitat;
- Potential erosion of denuded areas;
- Potential contamination of footprint area and surface runoff as a result of hydrocarbon spillages;

Drilling and blasting:

- Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities;
- Dust nuisance caused by blasting activities;
- Noise nuisance as a result of blasting;
- Potential impact on the shale mining- and brickworks infrastructure;

Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant:

- Dust nuisance due to excavation and from loading and vehicles transporting the material;
- Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities;
- Unsafe working environment for employees;
- Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills and/or littering;
- Potential impact on areas of palaeontological concern;
- Facilitation of erosion due to mining activities;

Processing, stockpiling and transporting of material:

- Dust nuisance generated at the processing plant;
- Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant;
- Potential contamination of environment due to improper waste management;
- Overloading of trucks impacting road infrastructure;
- Degradation of the access road;

Cumulative impacts:

- Impact the broad-scale ecological processes;
- Impact on existing infrastructure as a direct result of the mining operation;

Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation:

- Safety risk posed by un-sloped areas;
- Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation;
- Infestation of the reinstated areas by weeds and invader plant species;
- Potential impact associated with litter/waste left at the mining area.

**viii) The possible mitigation measures that could be applied and the level of risk**

(With regard to the issues and concerns raised by affected parties provide a list of the issues raised and an assessment/discussion of the mitigation or site layout alternatives available to accommodate or address their concerns, together with an assessment of the impacts or risks associated with the mitigation or alternatives considered)

The following mitigation measures are proposed to address/minimize the impact of the proposed activity on the surrounding environment:

**TOPOGRAPHY**

**Rehabilitating/Landscaping of Mining Area:**

- All structures and waste material will be removed from the site.
- Unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner, all stockpiled material must be removed from the site during the decommissioning phase.
- Disturbed or compacted areas will be ripped or scarified to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.
- Topsoil will be replaced to its original depth where available and stabilised with indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).
- No waste or scrap material may be buried or burned on site; all waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities.
- Photographic records will be taken at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation and submitted to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.
- If a reasonable assessment indicates that the re-establishment of vegetation is unacceptably slow, the Regional Manager may require that the soil be analysed and any deleterious effects on the soil arising from the mining operation be corrected and the area be seeded with a vegetation seed mix to his or her specification.
- On completion of operations, all structures or objects shall be dealt with in accordance with section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).

## **VISUAL CHARACTERISTICS**

### **Visual Mitigation:**

- The site must have a neat appearance and be kept in good condition at all times.
- Mining equipment must be stored neatly in dedicated areas when not in use.
- The permit holder must limit vegetation removal, and stripping of topsoil may only be done immediately prior to the mining/use of a specific area.
- The excavation must be contained within the approved footprint of the permitted area.
- Upon closure the site must be rehabilitated to ensure that the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area is reduced to the minimum.

## **AIR AND NOISE QUALITY**

### **Fugitive Dust Emission Mitigation Measures:**

- The liberation of dust into the surrounding environment must be effectively controlled by the use of, inter alia, straw, water spraying and/or environmentally friendly dust-allaying agents that contains no PCB's (e.g. DAS products).
- The site manager must ensure continuous assessment of all dust suppression equipment to confirm its effectiveness in addressing dust suppression.

- Speed on the haul roads must be limited to 20 km/h and 40 km/h on the access road to prevent the generation of excess dust.
- Areas devoid of vegetation, which could act as a dust source, must be minimized and vegetation removal may only be done immediately prior to mining.
- The crusher plant must have operational water sprayers to alleviate dust generation from the conveyor belts.
- Fines, blowing from the drop end of the crusher plant, can be minimized by attaching strips of used conveyor belts to the conveyor's end.
- Compacted dust must weekly be removed from the crusher plant to eliminate the dust source.
- Loads must be flattened to prevent spillage during transportation on public roads.
- Weather conditions must be taken into consideration upon commencement of daily operations. Limiting operations during very windy periods would reduce airborne dust and resulting impacts.
- All dust generating activities shall comply with the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827 promulgated in terms of NEM:AQA (Act 39 of 2004) and ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012).
- Best practice measures shall be implemented during the stripping of topsoil, excavation, and transporting of material from site to minimize potential dust impacts.

#### **Noise Handling:**

- The permit holder must ensure that employees and staff conduct themselves in an acceptable manner while on site.
- No loud music may be permitted at the mining area.
- All mining vehicles must be equipped with silencers and maintained in a road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act No 93 of 1996).
- The type, duration and timing of the blasting procedures must be planned with due cognizance of other land users and structures in the vicinity. Surrounding landowners must be notified in writing prior to each blasting occasion.
- A qualified occupational hygienist must be contracted to quarterly monitor and report on the personal noise exposure of the employees working at the mine. The monitoring must be done in accordance with the SANS 10083:2004 (Edition 5) sampling method as well as NEM:AQA, 2004, SANS 10103:2008.
- Site management must strive to minimise the noise caused by generators. All generators must be maintained and equipped with sound mufflers. If possible, the generators must be positioned towards the western part of the mining area (S1) as this will point it away from the neighbouring land users. Further to this, all generators must be placed on a level area/footing to minimise vibration noise.

- Best practice measures shall be implemented in order to minimize potential noise impacts.

## **GEOLOGY AND SOIL**

### **Topsoil Management:**

- The upper 300 mm of the soil must be stripped and stockpiled before mining.
- Topsoil is a valuable and essential resource for rehabilitation and it must therefore be managed carefully to conserve and maintain it throughout the stockpiling and rehabilitation processes.
- Topsoil stripping, stockpiling and re-spreading must be done in a systematic way. The mining plan has to be such that topsoil is stockpiled for the minimum possible time.
- The topsoil must be placed on a levelled area, within the mining footprint. No topsoil may be stockpiled in undisturbed areas.
- Topsoil stockpiles must be protected against losses by water- and wind erosion. Stockpiles must be positioned so as not to be vulnerable to erosion by wind and water. The establishment of plants (weeds or a cover crop) on the stockpiles will help to prevent erosion.
- Topsoil heaps may not exceed 1.5 m in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.
- The temporary topsoil stockpiles must be kept free of invasive plant species.
- Topsoil heaps to be stored longer than a period of 6 months needs to be vegetated with an indigenous grass seed mix if vegetation does not naturally germinate within the first growth season.
- Storm- and runoff water must be diverted around the stockpile area to prevent erosion.
- The stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread, to a depth of 300 mm, over the rehabilitated area upon closure of the site.
- The permit holder must strive to re-instate topsoil at a time of year when vegetation cover can be established as quickly as possible afterwards, so that erosion of returned topsoil by both rain and wind, before vegetation is established, is minimized. The best time of year is at the end of the rainy season, when there is moisture in the soil for vegetation establishment and the risk of heavy rainfall events is minimal.
- A cover crop must be planted and established immediately after spreading of topsoil, to stabilize the soil and protect it from erosion. The cover crop must be fertilized for optimum biomass production. It is important that rehabilitation be taken up to the point of cover crop stabilization. Rehabilitation cannot be considered complete until the first cover crop is well established.
- Run-off water must be controlled via temporary berms, where necessary, on the slopes to ensure that accumulation of run-off does not cause down-slope erosion.

- The rehabilitated area must be monitored for erosion, and appropriately stabilized if any erosion occurs for at least 12 months after reinstatement.

## HYDROLOGY

### **Erosion Control and Storm Water Management:**

- Clearing of vegetation must be limited to the proposed mining footprint and associated infrastructure. No clearing outside of the minimum required footprint to take place.
- Stormwater must be diverted around the topsoil heaps and mining areas to prevent erosion.
- Stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where possible, and be surrounded by appropriate berms.
- When mining within steep slopes, it must be ensured that adequate slope protection is provided.
- During mining, the outflow of run-off water from the mining excavation must be controlled to prevent down-slope erosion. This must be done by way of the construction of temporary banks and ditches that will direct run-off water (if needed). These must be in place at any points where overflow out of the excavation might occur.
- Roads and other disturbed areas within the project area must be regularly monitored for erosion and problem areas must receive follow-up monitoring to assess the success of the remediation.
- Any erosion problems within the mining area as a result of the mining activities observed must be rectified immediately (within 48 hours) and monitored thereafter to ensure that it does not re-occur.
- Silt/sediment traps/barriers must be used where there is a danger of topsoil or material stockpiles eroding and entering downstream drainage lines and other sensitive areas. These sediment/silt barriers must regularly be maintained and cleared so as to ensure effective drainage of the areas.
- Mining must be conducted only in accordance with the Best Practice Guideline for small scale mining that relates to storm water management, erosion and sediment control and waste management, developed by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), and any other conditions which that Department may impose:
  - Clean water (e.g. rainwater) must be kept clean and be routed to a natural watercourse by a system separate from the dirty water system. You must prevent clean water from running or spilling into dirty water systems.
- Polluting activities including storage of mining fleet, equipment wash down facilities and vehicle maintenance yards must be restricted to the workshop areas and must be undertaken on impermeable hard standing surfaces, which are formally drained to a dirty water drainage system at the site.

- All fuels and chemicals stored or used on site must be contained within fit for purpose containers and stored within designated storage areas. In order to prevent pollution of the surrounding environment during an accidental spillage, the designated storage areas must be situated on an impermeable surface and must feature a perimeter bund and a drainage sump. The volume of the bund and sump must be sized to contain at least 110% of the total volume of the fuel and chemicals being stored within the designated storage area. The storage areas must feature a roof to prevent inflow of rainwater, which would require the sump to be emptied more frequently.

## **TERRESTRIAL BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION AREAS AND GROUNDCOVER**

### **Management of Vegetation Removal:**

- The mining boundaries must be clearly demarcated and all operations must be contained to the approved mining area. The area outside the mining boundaries must be declared a no-go area, and all staff must be educated accordingly.
- A pre-commencement walk-through of the final mining footprint, must be done to identify species of conservation concern that need to be removed/relocated prior to bush clearance.
- Permits for the removal of protected plant species (if required) must be obtained and kept on-site in the possession (at all times) of the flora search and rescue team.
- A pre-commencement environmental induction for all site staff must be provided to ensure that basic environmental principles are adhered to. This includes awareness of no littering, appropriate handling of pollution and chemical spills, avoiding fire hazards, minimising wildlife interactions, remaining within demarcated construction areas, etc.
- Bush-clearance may only commence once the pre-commencement walkthrough have been implemented.
- Cleared vegetation to be retained at any time may not be burned, but can be mulched and stockpiled. Ideally the heaps can be covered with stockpiled topsoil and the material be retained for future site rehabilitation purposes.
- The on-site ECO must provide supervision and oversight of vegetation clearing activities and other activities which may cause damage to the environment, especially during the site establishment phase, when the majority of vegetation clearing is taking place.
- All vehicles must remain on demarcated roads and no unnecessary driving in the veld outside these areas may be allowed.
- No plants may be translocated or otherwise uprooted or disturbed for rehabilitation or other purposes without express permission from the ECO and without the relevant permits.
- No fires must be allowed on-site.

### **Management of Invasive Plant Species:**

- An invasive plant species management plan (Appendix I) must be implemented at the site to ensure the management and control of all species regarded as Category 1a and 1b invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto). Weed/alien clearing must be done on an ongoing basis throughout the life of the mining activities.
- No planting or importing of any alien species to the site for landscaping, rehabilitation or any other purpose may be allowed.
- All stockpiles (topsoil & overburden) must be kept free of invasive plant species.
- Management must take responsibility to control declared invader or exotic species on the rehabilitated areas. The following control methods can be used:
  - The plants can be uprooted, felled or cut off and can be destroyed completely.
  - The plants can be treated chemically by a registered pest control officer (PCO) through the use of an herbicide recommended for use by the PCO in accordance with the directions for the use of such an herbicide.

## **FAUNA**

### **Protection of Fauna:**

- The site manager must ensure no fauna is caught, killed, harmed, sold or played with.
- Any fauna directly threatened by the operational activities must be removed to a safe location by the ECO or other suitably qualified person.
- All personnel must undergo environmental induction regarding fauna management and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting species such as snakes, tortoises and owls which are often persecuted out of superstition. Workers must be instructed to report any animals that may be trapped in the working area.
- No snares may be set or nests raided for eggs or young.
- All vehicles must adhere to a low-speed limit (20 km/h on haul roads and 40 km/h on access roads is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises.
- No litter, food or other foreign material may be thrown or left around the site. Such items must be kept in the site vehicles and daily removed to the site camp.

## **CULTURAL AND HERITAGE ENVIRONMENT**

### **Archaeological, Heritage and Palaeontological Aspects:**

- All mining must be confined to the development footprint area.
- If during the pre-construction phase, construction, operations or closure phases of this project, any person employed by the developer, one of its subsidiaries, contractors and subcontractors, or service provider, finds any artefact of cultural significance or heritage

site, this person must cease work at the site of the find and report this find to their immediate supervisor, and through their supervisor to the senior on-site manager.

- It is the responsibility of the senior on-site Manager to make an initial assessment of the extent of the find, and confirm the extent of the work stoppage in that area.
- The senior on-site Manager must inform the ECO of the chance find and its immediate impact on operations. The ECO Chance Find Protocol are as follows:
  1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately (N.B. safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.
  2. Record key data while fossil remains are still in situ:
    - Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo
    - Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface
    - Photograph fossil(s) in situ with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)
  3. If feasible to leave fossils in situ:
    - Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation
    - Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume
  4. If not feasible to leave fossils in situ (emergency procedure only):
    - Carefully remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)
    - Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale
    - Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags
    - Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist
    - Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation
  5. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.
  6. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency.
  7. Specialist palaeontologist:
    - Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit

Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage Resources Agency minimum standards.

- Work may only continue once the go-ahead was issued by SAHRA.

## **LAND USE**

### **Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining:**

- The Applicant signed a lease agreement with the landowner to compensate for the loss of agricultural land for the duration of the mining period. If needed, mined-out/rehabilitated areas could revert back to agricultural use once the cover crop stabilised.
- A portion of Portion 4 of Farm Waaikraal 120, Beaufort West, has existing consent use approval for a quarry granted by the Beaufort West Municipality.

### **Management of the Access Road:**

- Storm water must be diverted around the access road to prevent erosion.
- Vehicular movement must be restricted to the existing access road and crisscrossing of tracks through undisturbed areas must be prohibited.
- Rutting and erosion of the access road caused as a direct result of the mining activities must be repaired by the permit holder.
- Overloading of the trucks must be prevented and proof of load weights must be filed and be available for auditing by relevant officials.
- The speed of all mining equipment/vehicles must be restricted to 20km on haul roads and 40 km/h on the access roads.

## **GENERAL**

### **Waste Management:**

- Regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services may only take place at the workshop and service area. If emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop, drip trays must be present. All waste products must be disposed of in a closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area (same day) to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal. This waste must be treated as hazardous waste and must be disposed of at a registered hazardous waste handling facility, alternatively collected by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor. The safe disposal certificates must be filed for auditing purposes.

- If a diesel bowser is used on site, it must be equipped with a drip tray at all times. Drip trays must be used during each and every refuelling event. The nozzle of the bowser needs to rest in a sleeve to prevent dripping after refuelling.
- Site management must ensure drip trays are cleaned after each use. No dirty drip trays may be used on site. The dirty rags used to clean the drip trays must be disposed as hazardous waste into a designated bin at the workshop, where it is incorporated into the hazardous waste removal system.
- Any effluents containing oil, grease or other industrial substances must be collected in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility. Proof of safe disposal must be filed for auditing purposes.
- An oil spill kit must be obtained, and the employees must be trained in the emergency procedures to follow when a spill occurs as well as the application of the spill kit.
- Spills must be cleaned up immediately, within two hours of occurrence, to the satisfaction of the Regional Manager (DMPR) by removing the spillage together with the polluted soil and containing it in a designated hazardous waste bin until it is disposed of at a recognised facility. Proof must be filed.
- Suitable covered receptacles must be available at all times and conveniently placed for the disposal of general waste.
- Non-biodegradable refuse such as glass bottles, plastic bags, metal scrap, etc., must be stored in a container with a closable lid at a collecting point to be collected at least once a month and disposed of at a recognized landfill site. Specific precautions must be taken to prevent refuse from being dumped on or in the vicinity of the mine area. Proof of disposal must be available for auditing purposes.
- Biodegradable refuse must be handled as indicated above.
- Re-use or recycling of waste products must be encouraged on site.
- No waste may be buried or burned on the site.
- Ablution facilities must be provided in the form of a chemical toilet/s. The chemical toilet must be anchored (to prevent blowing/falling over) and shall be serviced at least once a week for the duration of the mining activities by a registered liquid waste handling contractor. The safe disposal certificates must be filed for auditing purposes.
- The use of any temporary, chemical toilet facilities must not cause any pollution to water sources or pose a health hazard. In addition, no form of secondary pollution should arise from the disposal of refuse or sewage from the temporary, chemical toilets. Any pollution problems arising from the above are to be addressed immediately by the permit holder.
- When small volumes of wastewater are generated during the life of the mine the following is applicable:
  - Water containing waste must not be discharged into the natural environment.

- Measures to contain the waste water and safely dispose thereof must be implemented.
- It is important that any significant spillage of chemicals, fuels etc. during the lifespan of the mining activities is reported to the Department of Water and Sanitation and other relevant authorities.
- Site management must implement the use of waste registers to keep record of the waste generated and removed from the mining area.

#### **Storage/Handling of Hazardous Substances/Chemicals:**

- Chemical storage areas must be placed on level ground to prevent offsite migration of any spilled product.
- The floor of the storage area must be impermeable to prevent seepage of spilled products into the ground or ground water.
- Access to the chemicals/substances must be controlled and require prior notification of an appropriate staff member.
- A Hazardous Substances Register must be maintained, and Safety Data Sheets (SDS) must be kept current for all chemicals used on site.
- Any fuel/used oil tanks must have secondary containment in the form of an impermeable bund wall and base within which the tanks sits, raised above the floor, on plinths. The bund capacity must be sufficient to contain 110% of the tank's maximum capacity. The distance and height of the bund wall relative to that of the tank must also be taken into consideration to ensure that any spillage does not result in hydrocarbons/other substances spouting beyond the confines of the bund.
- The site manager must establish a formal inspection routine to check all equipment in the bund area, as well as the bund area itself for malfunctions or leakages. The bund area must be inspected at least weekly and any accumulated rainwater removed and handled as contaminated water. All valves and outlets must be checked to ensure that its intact and closed securely.
- The bund base must slope towards an oil sump of sufficient size. Contaminated water may not be allowed to mix with clean water, and must be contained until it is collected by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor or disposed of at a registered hazardous waste handling facility.
- Drip trays must be used underneath all stationary equipment or vehicles. Used drip trays must be placed within a bunded area and are not be stored on bare soil. The waste water originating from the cleaning of drip trays must be discarded into the oil sump.

#### **Management of health and safety risks:**

- Workers must have access to the correct personal protection equipment (PPE) as required by law.
- Sanitary facilities must be located within 100 m from any point of work.
- All operations must comply with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996).
- The type, duration and timing of the blasting procedures must be planned with due cognizance of other land users and structures in the vicinity.
- The surrounding landowners must be informed in writing ahead of each blasting event.
- The compliance of ground vibration and airblast levels must be monitored to USBM standards with each blasting event.
- A vibro recorder must be used to record all blasts.
- Audible warning of a pending blast must be given at least 3 minutes in advance of the blast.
- Measures to limit flyrock must be taken. All flyrock (of diameter 150 mm and larger) which falls beyond the working area, together with the rock spill must be collected and removed.

**ix) Motivation where no alternative sites were considered.**

As mentioned previously, the proposed mining area was identified as the preferred and only viable site alternative as it entails the mining of an area with low agricultural potential, the aggregate (dolerite) / gravel mining area can be moved to various alternative sites within close proximity of the proposed mining area but will still entail disturbing a greenfield area. However, the proposed mining area, as indicated on the Regulation 2.2 Mine Plan (attached as Appendix A), was identified as the preferred and only viable site alternative as the proposed area falls over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the land owner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not necessitate the loss of agricultural field with high potential to the land owner. This was deemed the only site alternative as this is the only area that will be viable for the land owner due to the low agricultural potential.

**Site Alternative 2:**

Site Alternative 2 (S2) was assessed for the proposed mining but found not environmentally and practically suitable. The earmarked area is also a greenfield site that will have a higher visual impact to be disturbed for the quarry to be established. Site alternative 1, was deemed the only site alternative as this is the only area that will be viable for the land owner due to the low agricultural potential.

This alternative site was not deemed to be the preferred option as the face of the quarry will directly face the N1 therefore the area will have very high visual impact on the surrounding area. In light of this, no alternative sites were considered during this assessment.

**x) Statement motivating the alternative development location within the overall site.**

(Provide a statement motivating the final site layout that is proposed)

Site Alternative 1 was identified during the assessment phase of the environmental impact assessment as the preferred and only site alternative. The following matters contributed to the identification of the preferred development footprint:

- 1. Topography** – The natural topography the proposed excavated area can be described extremely irregular to slightly undulating plains covered with dwarf spiny shrubland dominated by Karoo dwarf shrubs (e.g. *Chrysocoma ciliata*, *Eriocephalus ericoides*) with rare low trees (e.g. *Euclea undu-Jata*). Dense stands of drought-resistant grasses (*Stipagrostis*, *Aristida*) cover (especially after abundant rains) broad sandy bottom lands. The elevation loss from the proposed mining footprint to the town of Beaufort West to be 146 m over 29.5 km.
- 2. Visual Characteristics** – The viewshed analysis showed that the visual impact of the proposed gravel mining operation will be of low significance due to the already existing mining activities. The small scale of the proposed operation, and the mining area will be located between two hills in order to minimize the visual impact. Should the Applicant successfully rehabilitate the mining area (upon closure), no residual visual impact is expected upon closure of the mine.
- 3. Air and Noise Quality** – The proposed activity will contribute the emissions mechanical mining equipment to the receiving environment for the duration of the operational phase. Should the permit holder implement the mitigation measures proposed in this document and the EMPR the impact on the air quality of the surrounding environment is deemed to be of low significance and compatible with the current land use. The potential impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the traffic of the surrounding area.
- 4. Geology and Soil** – The site specific geology is representative of the regional geology and soil as described earlier in this report. The geology of the study area comprises mostly rimitive, skeletal soils in rocky areas developing over sedimentary rocks such as mudstones and arenites of the Adelaide Subgroup of the Karoo Supergroup and to a lesser extent also the Eccia Group (Waterford and Volksrust Formations) as well as Jurassic dolerite sills and dykes and subsummit positions of mesas and butts with dolerite boulder slopes. Almost entirely lb land type.

Mudstones and sandstones of the Beaufort Group (Adelaide Subgroup) with some Eccca (Fort Brown Formation) shales supporting very shallow and stony soils of the Glenrosa and/or Mispah forms, typical of Fe land type.

5. **Mining, Biodiversity and Groundcover** – Ground-truthing showed that the proposed footprint of the mining area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. The proposed area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. The Applicant will make use of the existing access roads to the mining area. Should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures proposed in the EMPr the impact of the proposed activity on the vegetation and groundcover in general is deemed to be of low significance.
6. **Fauna** - No protected or red data species were identified to be resident within the proposed footprint area. Various small mammals and reptiles occur on the property. Larger herbivore species are very scarce or absent due to the conflicting land use. The fauna at the site will not be impacted by the proposed mining activity as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. Workers will be informed and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. No poaching or hunting of animals will be allowed. All construction vehicles must adhere to a low speed limit (20 km/h on haul roads and 40 km/h on access roads is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises. Trenches and deep excavations must not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed must contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.
7. **Cultural and Heritage Environment** - The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.
8. **Site Specific Infrastructure** – There is only an existing quarry directly adjacent to the eastern boundary of the site. The following is located within close proximity:
  - An existing SANRAL quarry is located 900m south east of the site.
  - Guest lodge on the farm is located 2km south of the site

- The N1 – 2.5km towards the south of the site.

None of the above falls within 500m of the site area and will therefore not be affected.

**h) Full description of the process undertaken to identify, assess and rank the impacts and risks the activity will impose on the preferred site (In respect of the final site layout plan) through the life of the activity.**

(Including (i) a description of all environmental issues and risks that were identified during the environmental impact assessment process and (ii) an assessment of the significance of each issue and risk and an indication of the extent to which the issue and risk could be avoided or addressed by the adoption of mitigation measures)

During the impact assessment process the following potential impacts were identified of each main activity in each phase. An initial significance rating (listed under *v) Impacts and Risks Identified*) was determined for each potential impact should the mitigation measures proposed in this document not be implemented on-site. The impact assessment process then continued in identifying mitigation measures to address the impact that the proposed mining activity may have on the surrounding environment.

The significance rating was again determined for each impact using the methodology as explained under *vi) Methodology Used in Determining and Ranking the Significance*. The impact ratings listed below was determined for each impact **after** bringing the proposed mitigation measures into consideration and therefore represents the final layout/activity proposal.

## SITE ESTABLISHMENT & INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT:

Alteration of the agricultural sense of place

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	2	1	1.6	4	5	4.5	<b>7.5</b>				

Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Partial</b>					
2	2	2	2	4	5	4.5	<b>9</b>				

Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Partial</b>					
2	2	1	1.6	4	3	3.5	<b>5.6</b>				

Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
1	2	1	1.3	2	2	2	<b>2.6</b>				

Potential impact on archaeological artefacts

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
1	5	1	2.3	1	1	1	<b>2.3</b>				

New job opportunities as a result of the mining operation (Positive Impact)

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
4	4	5	4.6	5	5	5	<b>23</b>				

**STRIPPING AND STOCKPILING OF TOPSOIL AND/OR OVERBURDEN:**

Visual intrusion caused by mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: None</b>					
1	4	4	3	4	4	4	<b>12</b>				

Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	2	2	2	<b>5.2</b>				

Dust nuisance as a result of the disturbance of soil

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	3	4	3.5	<b>8</b>				

Noise nuisance generated by earthmoving machinery

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	3	2	2.3	3	4	3.5	<b>8</b>				

Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with weeds or invader plant species

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	2	3	4	2	3	<b>9</b>				

Potential impact on local fauna due to disturbance and loss of available habitat

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	4	1	2.3	2	2	2	<b>4.6</b>				

Potential erosion of denuded areas

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	4	1	2.3	2	2	2	<b>4.6</b>				

Potential contamination of footprint area and surface runoff as a result of hydrocarbon spillages

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	4	1	2.3	2	2	2	<b>4.6</b>				

**DRILLING AND BLASTING:**

Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
4	4	1	3	2	2	2	<b>6</b>				

Dust nuisance caused by blasting activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
4	4	1	3	2	2	<b>6</b>					

Noise nuisance as a result of blasting

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	2	3	2	3	<b>7.5</b>					

**EXCAVATION, LOADING AND HAULING TO THE PROCESSING PLANT**

Dust nuisance due to excavation and from loading and vehicles transporting the material

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	3	4	<b>9.1</b>					

Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Partial</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	3	4	<b>9.1</b>					

Unsafe working environment for employees

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
4	4	1	3	2	2	<b>6</b>					

Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills and/or littering

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	2	2	<b>5.2</b>					

Potential impact on areas of palaeontological concern

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
4	4	1	3	2	1	<b>4.5</b>					

Facilitation of erosion due to mining activities

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	1	1	<b>2.6</b>					

**PROCESSING, STOCKPILING AND TRANSPORTING OF MATERIAL:**

Dust nuisance generated at the processing plant

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	3	<b>9.1</b>					

Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Partial</b>					
2	4	2	2.6	4	3	<b>9.1</b>					

Potential contamination of environment due to improper waste management

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	1	2.6	2	2	2.5	<b>6.5</b>				

Overloading of trucks impacting road infrastructure

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	5	4	2	2	2	<b>8</b>				

Degradation of the access road

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	4	2	3	2	2	2	<b>6</b>				

**CUMULATIVE IMPACTS:**

Impact the broad-scale ecological processes

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Partial</b>					
4	4	4	4	2	1	1.5	<b>6</b>				

Impact on existing infrastructure as a direct result of the mining operation

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
4	4	5	4.3	1	1	1	<b>4.3</b>				

## SLOPING AND LANDSCAPING DURING REHABILITATION:

Safety risk posed by un-sloped areas

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	5	1	3	2	1	1.5	<b>4.5</b>				

Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	5	1	3	3	3	3	<b>9</b>				

Infestation of the reinstated areas by weeds and invader plant species

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
2	5	3	3.3	3	2	2.5	<b>8.25</b>				

Potential impact associated with litter/waste left at the mining area

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: Full</b>					
3	5	1	3	1	1	1	<b>3</b>				

Return of the mining area to agricultural use upon closure (Positive Impact)

			Consequence			Likelihood	Significance				
Severity	Duration	Extent		Probability	Frequency		Low	Low-Medium	Medium	Medium-High	High
1 - 4.9						1 - 4.9	5 - 9.9	10 - 14.9	15 - 19.9	20 - 25	
<b>Rating: Medium</b>			<b>Site Layout Alternative 1</b>			<b>Degree of Mitigation: N/A</b>					
3	5	1	3	5	5	5	<b>15</b>				

**i) Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk**

(This section of the report must consider all the known typical impacts of each of the activities (including those that could or should have been identified by knowledgeable persons and not only those that were raised by registered interested and affected parties).

*Table 21: Assessment of each identified potentially significant impact and risk*

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	SIGNIFICANCE	MITIGATION TYPE	SIGNIFICANCE
Whether listed or not listed.  (E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc...etc.)	(E.g. dust, noise, drainage surface disturbance, fly rock, surface water contamination, air pollution, etc...etc...etc.)		In which impact is anticipated. (E.g. Construction, commissioning, operational Decommissioning closure, post closure.)	If not mitigated.	(modify, remedy, control, or stop) through (e.g. noise control measures, storm water control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity etc etc)  E.g. Modify through alternative method Control through noise control Control through management and monitoring through rehabilitation.	If mitigated.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Demarcation of site with visible beacons.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No impact could be identified other than the beacons being outside the boundaries of the approved mining area.</li> </ul>	N/A	Site Establishment & Operational Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low-Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control:</u> Implementing proper housekeeping.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alteration of the agricultural sense of place.</li> </ul>	The impact may affect the agricultural opportunities of the property.	Site Establishment- and Decommissioning phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low-Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and storm water management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low-Medium</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining.</li> </ul>	The impact may affect the agricultural opportunities of the property.	Site Establishment-, Operational- and Decommissioning phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control:</u> Implementing soil- and storm water management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low - Medium</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	SIGNIFICANCE	MITIGATION TYPE	SIGNIFICANCE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment.</li> <li>■ Visual intrusion caused by mining activities.</li> </ul>	The visual impact may affect the aesthetics of the landscape.	Site Establishment- and Operational phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Medium - High</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Stop:</u> Implementing good management practices.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Medium</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on vegetation and listed and/or protected plant species.</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment.	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low-Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control:</u> Noise suppression methods and proper housekeeping.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area.</li> <li>■ Potential impact on local fauna due to disturbance and loss of available habitat.</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment.	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low-Medium</li> <li>■ Low-Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	SIGNIFICANCE	MITIGATION TYPE	SIGNIFICANCE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development</li> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> <li>■ Excavation, Loading and Hauling to the processing plant</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the disturbance of soil</li> <li>■ Dust nuisance due to excavation and from loading and vehicles transporting the material</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities</li> <li>■ Unsafe working environment for employees</li> <li>■ Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills and/or littering</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment.	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low – medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low - medium</li> <li>■ Low - medium</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on archaeological artefacts.</li> <li>■ Potential impact on areas of palaeontological concerns.</li> </ul>	This could impact on the cultural and heritage legacy of the receiving environment.	Operational Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Stop:</u> Implementing good management practices, as well as the chance-find protocol.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Drilling and Blasting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities</li> <li>■ Dust nuisance caused by blasting activities</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of blasting</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment	Operational Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> <li>■ Low - Medium</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	SIGNIFICANCE	MITIGATION TYPE	SIGNIFICANCE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>New job opportunities as a result of the mining operation (+)</li> </ul>	Contribution to the socio-economic status of the area.	Operational Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Medium-High</li> </ul>	<u>Control:</u> Proper site management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Medium-High</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Processing, Stockpiling and transporting of material</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dust nuisance generated at the processing plant</li> <li>Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling</li> <li>Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant</li> <li>Potential contamination of environment due to improper waste management</li> <li>Overloading of trucks impacting road infrastructure</li> <li>Degradation of the access road</li> <li>Potential erosion of denuded areas</li> <li>Potential contamination of footprint area and surface runoff as a result of hydrocarbon spillages</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment	Operational Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Medium</li> <li>Medium</li> <li>Medium - High</li> <li>Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan and Proper site management.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low-Medium</li> <li>Low</li> <li>Low</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	SIGNIFICANCE	MITIGATION TYPE	SIGNIFICANCE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Safety risk posed by un-sloped areas</li> <li>■ Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation</li> <li>■ Infestation of the reinstated areas by weeds and invader plant species</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with litter/waste left at the mining area</li> <li>■ Return of the mining area to agricultural use upon closure (Positive Impact)</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment	Decommissioning Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Medium - High</li> <li>■ Medium</li> <li>■ Medium - High</li> </ul>	<u>Control &amp; Remedy: Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan and Proper site management.</u>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Low-Medium</li> <li>■ Low</li> <li>■ Medium - High</li> </ul>

The supporting impact assessment conducted by the EAP must be attached as an appendix, marked Appendix G

**j) Summary of specialist reports.**

(This summary must be completed if any specialist reports informed the impact assessment and final site layout process and must be in the following tabular form):-

*Table 22: Summary of specialist reports*

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT  (Mark with X if applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED
<p>The screening report for an environmental authorisation, as required in terms of the 2014 NEMA EIA Regulations of a portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal No 120 situated in the Beaufort West magisterial district of the Western Cape Province identified the following list of specialist assessment for inclusion in the assessment report:</p>			

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT  (Mark with X if applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Agricultural Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Paleontology Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Aquatic Biodiversity Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Hydrology Assessment;</li> <li>■ Noise Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Radioactivity Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Traffic Impact Assessment;</li> <li>■ Geotechnical Assessment;</li> <li>■ Socio-economic Assessment;</li> <li>■ Plant Species Assessment;</li> <li>■ Animal Species Assessment.</li> <li>■ Civil Aviation Assessment</li> </ul> <p>Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd (hereafter referred to as the applicant) appointed Greenmined Environmental (Pty) Ltd as the environmental impact assessment practitioner (EAP) to undertake the EIA associated with the mining permit application. In light of this Greenmined would like to respond as follows to the list of required specialist studies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Agricultural Impact Assessment (AIA):</li> </ul> <p>The portion of Portion 4 of the farm Waai Kraal No 120 situated in the Beaufort West magisterial district of the Western Cape Province is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the land owner Greenmined is of the opinion that a specialist AIA is not needed as the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not necessitate the loss of any agricultural field, center pivot or similarly operated agricultural area.</p>			

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT  (Mark with X if applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED
	<p>Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) &amp; Paleontology Impact Assessment (PIA):</p> <p>As mentioned before, the National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.</p> <p>Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment (TBIA) &amp; Animal Species Assessment (ASA):</p> <p>An ecologist was appointed to conduct a study of the proposed footprint area. These findings are included under Plant Species Assessment (PSA).</p> <p>Aquatic Biodiversity Impact Assessment (ABIA) &amp; Hydrology Assessment (HA):</p> <p>The proposed project does not require a Water Use Authorisation in terms of Section 39 of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act No 36 of 1998). No activity will take place in or in close proximity to any water bodies. Any water required for the implementation of the project will be bought and transported to site. Therefore, in light of the consultation on this stage there is no need for a ABIA &amp; HA.</p> <p>Noise Impact Assessment (NIA):</p> <p>The potential impact on the noise ambience of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the machinery already operational at the property. Due to the small scale of the operation a NIA is not deemed applicable.</p> <p>Radioactivity Impact Assessment</p>		

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT  (Mark with X if applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED
	<p>A radioactivity impact assessment is not deemed necessary for the proposed mining operation that will not store any chemicals on site, perform activities of radioactive nature or generate hazardous waste of radioactive nature.</p> <p>■ Traffic Impact Assessment (TIA):</p> <p>The Applicant will use the existing road to access the mining area and transport material from the mining area. The existing road has a formal entrance and was also used by the SANRAL to transport material. No upgrading of the road is needed prior to commencement. In light of the small scale of the proposed operation a TIA is not deemed necessary, should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures to be proposed in the EMPR.</p> <p>■ Geotechnical Assessment:</p> <p>No reason for a geotechnical assessment could be identified as no permanent infrastructure will be established at the proposed mining area.</p> <p>■ Socio-economic Assessment (SEA):</p> <p>The material to be sourced from the mining area will be used for the upgrading of the road infrastructure in the vicinity of the site. The proposed mine will be operated on an area with very low agricultural potential. Should any additional workers to be required on this mining activity they will be sourced from the local community. Workers will daily be transported to the site. The establishment of the mining area on the farm will also assist the property owner in the diversification of their income. In light of this a SEA is not deemed applicable to this project.</p> <p>■ Terrestrial Biodiversity Impact Assessment (TBIA), Animal Species Assessment (ASA), Plant Species Assessment (PSA):</p> <p>The National Web-based Environmental Screening Tool has characterized the Plant and Animal Sensitivity Theme to be of medium sensitivity whereas the Terrestrial Biodiversity Theme is rated with low sensitivity. As mentioned earlier, ground-truthing showed that the proposed footprint of the mining area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. The proposed area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. The Applicant will make use of the existing access roads to the mining area (not disturbing any other areas) and fauna will not be impacted</p>		

LIST OF STUDIES UNDERTAKEN	RECOMMENDATIONS OF SPECIALIST REPORTS	SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS THAT HAVE BEEN INCLUDED IN THE EIA REPORT  (Mark with X if applicable)	REFERENCE TO APPLICABLE SECTION OF REPORT WHERE SPECIALIST RECOMMENDATIONS HAVE BEEN INCLUDED
<p>by the proposed mining activities as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. In light of the small scale of the proposed operation a TBIA, ASA and PSA is not deemed necessary, should the Applicant implement the mitigation measures to be proposed in the EMPR.</p> <p>■ Civil Aviation Assessment</p> <p>A civil aviation impact assessment is not deemed necessary for the proposed mining activities since the operations will have no effect on the air corridor that is situated above the area. The proposed operations will not consist of any high infrastructure or signal preventing equipment that will prevent airplanes from flying. The proposed mining activities is at 3400ft above sea level and the safe flying altitude is much higher than the operating altitude of the proposed mine and will not infringe on air traffic operations even if aircraft do fly directly over the proposed mining area.</p>			

## **k) Environmental impact statement**

### **i) Summary of the key findings of the environmental impact assessment;**

The key findings of the environmental impact assessment entail the following:

#### **Project Proposal**

Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd applied for authorisation to mine aggregate (dolerite)/ gravel from a 4.9 ha area has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; the material will then be loaded and hauled to the crushing plant where it will be screened to various sized stockpiles. The aggregate will be stockpiled until it is transported from site using tipper trucks. All mining related activities will be contained within the approved mining permit boundaries. The proposed area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. After consultation with the land owner the application footprint extends into an area with low agricultural potential. The proposed project will not necessitate the loss of agricultural field with high potential to the land owner.

#### **Topography**

The natural topography of the area surrounding the proposed aggregate / gravel mine is best described as extremely irregular to slightly undulating plains covered with dwarf spiny shrubland dominated by Karoo dwarf shrubs (e.g. *Chrysocoma ciliata*, *Eriocephalus ericoides*) with rare low trees (e.g. *Euclea undu-Jata*). Dense stands of drought-resistant grasses (*Stipagrostis*, *Aristida*) cover (especially after abundant rains) broad sandy bottom lands. The elevation loss from the proposed mining footprint to the town of Beaufort West to be 146 m over 29.5 km.

#### **Visual Characteristics**

The viewshed analysis showed that the visual impact of the proposed aggregate / gravel mining operation will be of low significance. The small scale of the proposed operation, and the mining area will be located between two hills in order to minimize the visual impact. Should the Applicant successfully rehabilitate the mining area (upon closure), no residual visual impact is expected upon closure of the mine.

#### **Air and Noise Quality**

The proposed activity will contribute the emissions mechanical mining equipment to the receiving environment for the duration of the operational phase. Should the permit holder implement the mitigation measures proposed in this document and the EMPR the impact on the air quality of the surrounding environment is deemed to be of low significance and compatible with the current land use. The potential impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the traffic of the surrounding area.

### **Geology and Soil**

The site-specific geology is representative of the regional geology and soil as described earlier in this report. The geology of the study area comprises mostly rimitive, skeletal soils in rocky areas devel-oping over sedimentary rocks such as mudstones and arenites of the Adelaide Subgroup of the Karoo Supergroup and to a lesser extent also the Eccca Group (Waterford and Volksrust Formations) as well as Jurassic dolerite sills and dykes and subsummit positions of mesas and butts with dolerite boulder slopes. Almost entirely lb land type.

Mudstones and sandstones of the Beaufort Group (Adelaide Subgroup) with some Eccca (Fort Brown Formation) shales supporting very shallow and stony soils of the Glenrosa and/or Mispah forms, typical of Fe land type.

The aggregate / gravel of the study area is aggregate highly suitable for construction purposes. The mining method will make use of blasting in order to loosen the hard rock; upon which the loosened material will be transported to a processing area (inside mining boundary) where it will be crushed and screened to various sized stockpiles, before being sold and transported from site to clients.

### **Mining, Biodiversity and Groundcover**

Ground-truthing showed that the proposed footprint of the mining area is over an area that has been partially disturbed by adjacent mining activities and has very low agricultural potential due to the rocky surface. The proposed area consists of a combination of heavily disturbed terrain and surrounding natural semi-arid vegetation, with approximately 60–70% of the area visibly disturbed. The remaining 30–40% of the area consists of patchy natural vegetation typical of dry shrubland, comprising low grasses and small shrubs with occasional isolated bushes. The Applicant will make use of the existing access roads to the mining area. Should the Applicant implement

the mitigation measures proposed in the EMP the impact of the proposed activity on the vegetation and groundcover in general is deemed to be of low significance.

### **Fauna**

Various small mammals and reptiles occur are likely to on the property. The fauna at the site will not be impacted by the proposed mining activities as they will be able to move away or through the site, without being harmed. Workers should be educated and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. At this stage no resident protected or red data faunal species could be identified within the earmarked footprint. The study area falls over a property that is noted to be operational game farms, should this mining permit be granted farm owner will be consulted prior to commencement of any activities to ensure that safety of animals and workers. Workers will be informed and managed to ensure that no fauna at the site is harmed. No poaching or hunting of animals will be allowed. All construction vehicles must adhere to a low speed limit (20 km/h on haul roads and 40 km/h on access roads is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises. Trenches and deep excavations should not be left open for extended periods of time as fauna may fall in and become trapped in them. Trenches which are exposed should contain soil ramps allowing fauna to escape the trench.

### **Cultural and Heritage Environment**

The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be implemented in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.

### **Site Specific Infrastructure**

There is only an existing quarry directly adjacent to the eastern boundary of the site. The following is located within close proximity:

- An existing SANRAL quarry is located 900m south east of the site.
- Guest lodge on the farm is located 2km south of the site
- The N1 – 2.5km towards the south of the site.

None of the above falls within 500m of the site area and will therefore not be affected.

**ii) Final Site Map**

Provide a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed overall activity and its associated structure and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site indicating any areas that should be avoided, including buffers. Attach as Appendix.

See the map indicating site activities attached as Appendix C.











**iii) Summary of the positive and negative impacts and risks of the proposed activity and identified alternatives;**

The positive impacts associated with the project include:

- Possible work opportunities to local residents;
- Return of the mining area to agricultural use upon closure of the project; and
- Diversification of the land use of the property.

*Table 23: Potential negative impacts with a low-medium or higher significance/risk.*

<b>POTENTIAL IMPACT</b>	<b>SIGNIFICANCE (AFTER MITIGATION)</b>
■ Alteration of the agricultural sense of place	■ Low-Medium
■ Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment	■ Low-Medium
■ Visual intrusion caused by mining activities	■ Medium
■ Dust nuisance due to excavation and from loading and vehicles transporting the material	■ Low-Medium
■ Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling	■ Low-Medium
■ Unsafe working environment for employees	■ Low-Medium
■ Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills and/or littering	■ Low – Medium
■ Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities	■ Low – Medium
■ Dust nuisance caused by blasting activities	■ Low-Medium
■ Noise nuisance as a result of blasting	■ Low-Medium
■ Dust nuisance generated at the processing plant	■ Low-Medium
■ Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant	■ Low-Medium

POTENTIAL IMPACT	SIGNIFICANCE (AFTER MITIGATION)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Potential contamination of environment due to improper waste management </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Low-Medium </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Overloading of trucks impacting road infrastructure </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Low – Medium </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Degradation of the access road </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Low – Medium </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Infestation of the reinstated areas by weeds and invader plant species </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Low – Medium </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Overloading of trucks having an impact on the public roads </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>  Low – Medium </li> </ul>

**l) Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMPr;**

Based on the assessment and where applicable the recommendations from specialist reports, the recording of proposed impact management objectives, and the impact management outcomes for the development for inclusion in the EMPr as well as for inclusion as condition of authorisation.

*Table 24: Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMPR*

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>TOPOGRAPHY</b></p> <p>Landscaping of Mining Area</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Remove all structures and waste material from the site.</li> <li>• Remove all stockpiled material from the site during the decommissioning phase, unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner.</li> <li>• Rip or scarify disturbed or compacted areas to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.</li> <li>• Replace topsoil to its original depth where available and stabilise it with an indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).</li> <li>• Do not bury or burn any waste or scrap material on site; dispose of all waste at licensed facilities.</li> <li>• Take photographic records at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation, and submit them to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.</li> <li>• Conduct a soil analysis and correct any deleterious effects arising from mining operations if vegetation re-establishment is unacceptably slow, as determined by a reasonable assessment, and reseed the area with a vegetation seed mix specified by the Regional Manager.</li> <li>• On completion of operations, deal with all structures or objects in accordance with section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Effectively restoring the mined area to allow the return of land use to agricultural purposes.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>VISUAL CHARACTERISTICS</b></p> <p>Visual mitigation</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the site have a neat appearance and is kept in good condition at all times.</li> <li>• Store mining equipment in a dedicated area when not in use.</li> <li>• Limit vegetation removal, and only strip topsoil immediately prior to the mining/use of a specific area.</li> <li>• Contain excavations to the approved footprint of the permitted area.</li> <li>• Upon closure, rehabilitate the site to ensure that the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area is reduced to the minimum.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▀ Minimise the impact of the mining operations on the visual characteristics of the receiving environment during the operational phase, and minimise the residual impact after closure.</li> </ul>
<p><b>AIR AND NOISE QUALITY</b></p> <p>Dust Mitigation</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Control the liberation of dust into the surrounding environment by the use of; inter alia, water spraying and/or other dust-allaying agents.</li> <li>• Ensure continuous assessment of all dust suppression equipment to confirm its effectiveness in addressing dust suppression.</li> <li>• Limit speed on the haul roads to 20 km/h and 40 km/h on the access road to prevent the generation of excess dust.</li> <li>• Minimise areas devoid of vegetation, and only remove vegetation immediately prior to mining.</li> <li>• Install water sprayers at the crusher plant to alleviate dust generation from the conveyor belts.</li> <li>• Minimise fines, blowing from the drop end of the crusher plant by attaching strips of used conveyor belts to the conveyor's end.</li> <li>• Weekly remove compacted dust from the crusher plant to eliminate the dust source.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▀ Dust prevention measures are applied to minimise the impact.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flatten loads to prevent spillage during transportation on public roads.</li> <li>• Consider weather conditions upon commencement of daily operations. Limit operations during very windy periods to reduce airborne dust and resulting impacts.</li> <li>• Ensure dust generating activities comply with the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827 promulgated in terms of NEM:AQA, 2004 and ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012).</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures during the stripping of topsoil, excavation, and transporting of material from site to minimize potential dust impacts.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>AIR AND NOISE QUALITY</b></p> <p>Noise Mitigation</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that employees and staff conduct themselves in an acceptable manner while on site.</li> <li>• No loud music may be permitted at the mining area.</li> <li>• Ensure that all project related vehicles are equipped with silencers and maintained in a road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996.</li> <li>• Plan the type, duration and timing of the blasting procedures with due cognizance of other land users and structures in the vicinity. Notify the surrounding land owners in writing prior to each blasting occasion.</li> <li>• Contract a qualified occupational hygienist to quarterly monitor and report on the personal noise exposure of the employees working at the mine. Monitoring must be in accordance with SANS 10083:2004 (Edition 5) sampling method as well as NEM:AQA 2004, SANS 10103:2008.</li> <li>• Implement best practice measures to minimise potential noise impacts.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Prevent unnecessary noise to the environment by ensuring that noise from development activity is mitigated.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>GEOLOGY AND SOIL</b></p> <p>Topsoil Handling</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Strip and stockpile the upper 300 mm of the soil before mining.</li> <li>• Carefully manage and conserve the topsoil throughout the stockpiling and rehabilitation process.</li> <li>• Ensure topsoil stripping, stockpiling and re-spreading is done in a systematic way. Plan mining in such a way that topsoil is stockpiled for the minimum possible time.</li> <li>• Place the topsoil on a levelled area, within the mining footprint. Do not stockpile topsoil in undisturbed areas.</li> <li>• Protect topsoil stockpiles against losses by water- and wind erosion. Position stockpiles so it is not vulnerable to erosion by wind and water. The establishment of plants (weeds or a cover crop) on the stockpiles will help to prevent erosion.</li> <li>• Ensure that topsoil heaps do not exceed 1.5 m in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.</li> <li>• Keep temporary topsoil stockpiles free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>• Vegetate the topsoil heaps to be stored longer than 6 months with an indigenous grass seed mix if vegetation does not naturally germinate within the first growth season.</li> <li>• Divert storm- and runoff water around the stockpile area to prevent erosion.</li> <li>• Spread the topsoil evenly, to a depth of 300 mm, over the rehabilitated area upon closure of the site.</li> <li>• Strive to re-instate topsoil at a time of the year when vegetation cover can be established as quickly as possible afterwards, to that erosion of returned topsoil</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Adequate fertile topsoil is available to rehabilitate the mined area.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>is minimized. The best time of year is at the end of the rainy season.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Plant a cover crop immediately after spreading topsoil to stabilise the soil and protect it from erosion. Fertilise the cover crop for optimum production. Rehabilitation extends until the first cover crop is well established.</li> <li>• Control run-off water with temporary banks, where necessary, to prevent accumulation of run-off causing down-slope erosion.</li> <li>• Monitor the rehabilitated area for erosion, and appropriately stabilize if erosion do occur, for at least 12 months after reinstatement.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>HYDROLOGY</b></p> <p>Erosion Control and Storm Water Management</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Limit clearing of vegetation to the proposed mining footprint and associated infrastructure. Ensure no clearing takes place outside the minimum required footprint.</li> <li>• Divert stormwater around the topsoil heaps and mining areas to prevent erosion.</li> <li>• Protect stockpiles from erosion, and store it on flat areas surrounded by appropriate berms where possible.</li> <li>• Ensure that adequate slope protection is provided when mining within steep slopes.</li> <li>• Control the outflow of run-off water from the mining excavation to prevent down-slope erosion, by constructing temporary banks and ditches that will direct run-off water (if needed). These must be in place at any points where overflow out of the excavation might occur.</li> <li>• Regularly monitor roads and other disturbed areas within the project for erosion, and ensure problem</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ Impact on the environment caused by stormwater discharge is avoided and erosion is managed.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>areas receive follow-up monitoring to assess the success of the remediation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rectify erosion problems within the mining area as a result of the mining activities immediately (within 48 hours) and monitored thereafter to ensure that it does not re-occur.</li> <li>• Use silt/sediment traps/barriers where there is a danger of topsoil or material stockpiles eroding and entering downstream drainage lines and other sensitive areas. Regularly maintain and clear the sediment/silt barriers to ensure effective drainage of the areas.</li> <li>• Conduct activity in terms of the Best Practice Guidelines for small-scale mining as developed by DWS.</li> <li>• Restrict polluting activities including storage of mining fleet, equipment wash down facilities and vehicle maintenance yards to the workshop areas and ensure it takes place on impermeable hard standing surfaces, which formally drain to a dirty water drainage system at the site.</li> <li>• Contain all fuels and chemicals stored or used on site in fit for purpose containers and store within designated storage areas. Ensure the designated storage areas are situated on an impermeable surface with a perimeter bund and a drainage sump. Size the volume of the bund and sump to contain at least 110% of the total volume of the fuel and chemicals being stored within the designated storage area. Ensure that the storage areas have a roof to prevent inflow of rainwater, which would require the sump to be emptied more frequently.</li> </ul>	

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>TERRESTRIAL BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION AREAS AND GROUNDCOVER</b></p> <p>Management of vegetation removal.</p>	<p>Permit holder to apply for a destruction/removal plant permit from DEADP</p> <p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clearly demarcate the mining boundaries and contain all operations to the approved mining area. Declare the area outside the mining boundaries a no-go area, and educate all staff accordingly.</li> <li>• Arrange a pre-commencement walk-through of the final mining footprint for species of conservation concern that need to be removed/relocated prior to bush clearance.</li> <li>• Obtain permits for the removal of protected plant species (if required) and keep it on-site in the possession (at all times) of the flora search and rescue team.</li> <li>• Arrange a pre-commencement environmental induction for all staff on site to ensure that basic environmental principles are adhered to. This must include awareness of no littering, appropriate handling of pollution and chemical spills, avoiding fire hazards, minimising wildlife interactions, remaining within demarcated construction areas, etc.</li> <li>• Do not burn cleared vegetation to be retained at any time, but rather mulch and stockpiled it. Ideally cover the heaps with stockpiled topsoil and retain the material for future site rehabilitation.</li> <li>• The on-site ECO must provide supervision and oversight of vegetation clearing activities and other activities which may cause damage to the environment, especially during the site establishment phase, when the majority of vegetation clearing is taking place.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetation clearing is restricted to the authorised development footprint of the mine.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure all vehicles remain on demarcated roads and prevent unnecessary driving in the veld outside these areas.</li> <li>• Do not translocated, uprooted or disturbed plants for rehabilitation or other purposes without express permission from the ECO and without the relevant permits.</li> <li>• Do not allow fires on-site.</li> <li>• Provide spoil heaps and topsoil stockpiles with a vegetation cover of indigenous grasses.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>TERRESTRIAL BIODIVERSITY, CONSERVATION AREAS AND GROUNDCOVER</b></p> <p>Management of invasive plant species.</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Implement an invasive plant species management plan to control all invasive plant species on site in terms of NEM:BA, 2004 and CARA, 1983. Do weed/alien ongoing clearing on throughout the life of the mining activities.</li> <li>• Do not allow planting or importing of any alien species to the site for landscaping, rehabilitation or any other purpose.</li> <li>• Keep all stockpiles (topsoil &amp; overburden) free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>• Control declared invader or exotic species on the rehabilitated areas.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▀ Mining area is kept free of invasive plant species.</li> </ul>
<p><b>FAUNA</b></p> <p>Protection of fauna</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure no fauna is caught, killed, harmed, sold or played with.</li> <li>• The ECO or other suitably qualified person must remove any fauna directly threatened by the operational activities to a safe location.</li> <li>• Arrange that all personnel undergo environmental induction regarding fauna management and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▀ Disturbance to fauna is minimised.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>species such as snakes, tortoises and owls which are often persecuted out of superstition. Instruct workers to report any animals that may be trapped in the working area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure no snares are set or nests raided for eggs or young.</li> <li>• Ensure all vehicles adhere to a low speed limit (20 km/h on haul roads and 40 km/h on access roads is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises.</li> <li>• Prevent litter, food or other foreign material thrown or left around the site. Keep such items in the site vehicles and daily removed it to the site camp.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>CULTURAL AND HERITAGE ENVIRONMENT</b></p> <p>Archaeological, heritage and palaeontological aspects.</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confine all mining to the development footprint area.</li> <li>• Implement the following chance find procedure when discoveries are made on site: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If fossils are found during quarrying, they must be excavated and collected by a professional palaeontologist, working under a HWC permit and then housed in a recognised repository.</li> <li>▪ If during the pre-construction phase, construction, operations or closure phases of this project, any person employed by the developer, one of its subsidiaries, contractors and subcontractors, or service provider, finds any artefact of cultural significance or heritage site, this person must cease work at the site of the find and report this find to their immediate supervisor, and through their supervisor to the senior on-site manager.</li> <li>▪ It is the responsibility of the senior on-site Manager to make an initial assessment of the extent of the</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Impact to cultural/heritage resources is avoided or at least minimised.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>find, and confirm the extent of the work stoppage in that area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The senior on-site Manager must inform the ECO of the chance find and its immediate impact on operations. The ECO Chance Find Protocol are as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately (N.B. safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.</li> <li>2. Record key data while fossil remains are still in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo</li> <li>▪ Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface</li> <li>▪ Photograph fossil(s) in situ with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. If feasible to leave fossils in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> <li>▪ Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. If not feasible to leave fossils in situ (emergency procedure only):                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carefully remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ul>	

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale</li> <li>▪ Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags</li> <li>▪ Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist</li> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> </ul> <p>5. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.</p> <p>6. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency.</p> <p>7. Specialist palaeontologist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage.</li> <li>▪ Work may only continue once the go-ahead was issued by SAHRA.</li> </ul>	

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>LAND USE</b></p> <p>Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining.</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If needed, sign mined-out/rehabilitated areas back to agricultural use once the cover crop stabilised.</li> <li>■ A portion of Portion 4 of Farm Waaikraal 120, Beaufort West, has existing consent use approval for a quarry granted by the Beaufort West Municipality.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining has the least possible impact on the operation of the property.</li> </ul>
<p><b>EXISTING INFRASTRUCTURE</b></p> <p>Management of the access road.</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Divert storm water around the access road to prevent erosion.</li> <li>● Restrict vehicular movement to the existing access road to prevent crisscrossing of tracks through undisturbed areas.</li> <li>● Repair rutting and erosion of the access road caused as a direct result of the mining activities.</li> <li>● Prevent the overloading of the trucks and file proof of load weights for auditing by relevant officials.</li> <li>● Restrict the speed of all mining equipment/vehicles to 40 km/h on the access roads and 20 km/h on haul roads.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The access road remains accessible to the landowner and lawful occupiers during the operational phase, and upon closure, the road is returned in a better, or at least the same state as received by the permit holder.</li> </ul>
<p><b>GENERAL</b></p> <p>Waste management</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Ensure regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services only take place at the workshop and service area. Ensure drip trays are present if emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop. Dispose all waste products in a closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area (same day) to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal. Treat this as hazardous waste and dispose of it at a registered hazardous waste handling facility, alternatively arrange collection by a</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Wastes are appropriately handled and safely disposed of at recognised waste facilities.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>registered hazardous waste handling contractor. File safe disposal certificates for auditing purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a diesel bowser is used on site, equip it with a drip tray at all times. Use drip trays during each and every refuelling event. The nozzle of the bowser needs to rest in a sleeve to prevent dripping after refuelling.</li> <li>• Ensure drip trays are cleaned after each use. Do not allow dirty drip trays to be used on site. Dispose of dirty rags used to clean the drip trays as hazardous waste into a designated bin at the workshop, where it is incorporated into the hazardous waste removal system.</li> <li>• Collect any effluents containing oil, grease or other industrial substances in a suitable receptacle and remove it from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility. File proof.</li> <li>• Obtain an oil spill kit, and train the employees in the emergency procedures to follow when a spill occurs as well as the application of the spill kit.</li> <li>• Clean spills immediately, within two hours of occurrence, to the satisfaction of the Regional Manager (DMPR) by removing the spillage together with the polluted soil and containing it in a designated hazardous waste bin until it is disposed of at a recognised facility. File proof.</li> <li>• Ensure suitable covered receptacles are available at all times and conveniently placed for the disposal of general waste.</li> <li>• Store non-biodegradable refuse such as glass bottles, plastic bags, metal scrap, etc., in a container with a closable lid at a collecting point to be collected at least</li> </ul>	

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<p>once a month and disposed of at a recognized landfill site. Take specific precautions to prevent refuse from being dumped on or in the vicinity of the mine area. File proof of disposal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Handle biodegradable refuse as indicated above.</li> <li>• Encourage re-use or recycling of waste products.</li> <li>• Do not bury or burn waste on the site.</li> <li>• Provide ablution facilities in the form of a chemical toilet/s. Anchor the chemical toilet (to prevent blowing/falling over) and arrange that it is serviced at least once a week for the duration of the mining activities by a registered liquid waste handling contractor. File the safe disposal certificates.</li> <li>• Ensure that the use of any temporary, chemical toilet facilities do not cause any pollution to water sources or pose a health hazard. In addition, ensure that no form of secondary pollution arise from the disposal of refuse or sewage from the temporary, chemical toilets. Address any pollution problems arising from the above immediately.</li> <li>• Do not discharge water containing waste into the natural environment.</li> <li>• Implement measures to contain the waste water and safely dispose thereof.</li> <li>• Report any significant spillage of chemicals, fuels etc. during the lifespan of the mining activities to the Department of Water and Sanitation and other relevant authorities.</li> <li>• Implement the use of waste registers to keep record of the waste generated and removed from the mining area.</li> </ul>	

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
<p><b>GENERAL</b></p> <p>Storage/handling of hazardous substances/chemicals.</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Place chemical storage areas on level ground to prevent offsite migration of any spilled product.</li> <li>• Ensure that the floor of the storage area is impermeable to prevent seepage of spilled products into the ground or ground water.</li> <li>• Control access to the chemicals/substances and implement a notification system of an appropriate staff member.</li> <li>• Ensure that the storage area is out of the 1:100 year floodline or further than 100 m from the edge of a watercourse, whichever is greatest.</li> <li>• Maintain a Hazardous Substances Register, and keep Safety Data Sheets (SDS) current for all chemicals used on site.</li> <li>• Ensure any fuel/used oil tanks have secondary containment in the form of an impermeable bund wall and base within which the tanks sits, raised above the floor, on plinths. Check that the bund capacity is sufficient to contain 110% of the tank's maximum capacity. Ensure that the distance and height of the bund wall relative to that of the tank is taken into consideration to ensure that any spillage does not result in hydrocarbons/other substances spouting beyond the confines of the bund.</li> <li>• Establish a formal inspection routine to check all equipment in the bund area, as well as the bund area itself for malfunctions or leakages. Inspect the bund area at least weekly and remove any accumulated rainwater and hand it as contaminated water. Check all valves and outlets to ensure that its intact and closed securely.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The chemical/hazardous substances used on site are stored according to specifications without contaminating the receiving environment.</li> </ul>

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES	ROLE	MANAGEMENT ACTION	MANAGEMENT OUTCOME
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the bund base slope towards an oil sump of sufficient size. Do not allow contaminated water to mix with clean water, and contain it until it is collected by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor or disposed of at a registered hazardous waste handling facility.</li> <li>• Use drip trays under all stationary equipment or vehicles. Place used drip trays within a bunded area and do not store on the bare soil. Discard the waste water originating from the cleaning of drip trays into the oil sump.</li> </ul>	
<p><b>GENERAL</b></p> <p>Management of health and safety risks</p>	<p>Site Manager to ensure compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</p> <p>Compliance to be monitored by the Environmental Control Officer.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that workers have access to the correct PPE as required by law.</li> <li>• Locate sanitary facilities within 100 m from any point of work.</li> <li>• Manage all operations in compliance with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996).</li> <li>• Plan the type, duration and timing of blasting with due cognizance of other land users and structures in the vicinity.</li> <li>• Inform the surrounding landowners and communities in writing ahead of any blasting event.</li> <li>• Monitor the compliance of ground vibration and airblast levels to USBM standards with each blasting event.</li> <li>• Record all blasts with a vibro recorder.</li> <li>• Give audible warning of a pending blast at least 3 minutes in advance of the blast.</li> <li>• Limit fly rock, and collect and remove flyrock and rock spill that falls beyond the working area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Employees work in a healthy and safe environment.</li> </ul>



**m) Aspects for inclusion as conditions of Authorisation.**

Any aspects which must be made conditions of the Environmental Authorisation

The management objectives listed in this report under *Part A(1)(m) Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMPR* above should be considered for inclusion in the environmental authorisation.

**n) Description of any assumptions, uncertainties and gaps in knowledge.**

(Which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed)

The assumptions made in this document which relate to the assessment and mitigation measures proposed, stem from site specific information gathered from site inspections, desktop studies as well as the specialist study. No uncertainty regarding the proposed project or the receiving environment could be identified.

**o) Reasoned opinion as to whether the proposed activity should or should not be authorised**

**i) Reasons why the activity should be authorised or not.**

Should the mitigation measures and monitoring programmes proposed in this document be implemented on site, no fatal flaws could be identified that were deemed as severe as to prevent the activity continuing.

**ii) Conditions that must be included in the authorisation**

The management objectives listed in this report under *Part A(1)(m) Proposed impact management objectives and the impact management outcomes for inclusion in the EMPR* should be considered for inclusion in the environmental authorisation.

**p) Period for which the Environmental Authorisation is required.**

The Applicant requests the Environmental Authorisation to be valid for a five-year period to correspond with the validity of the mining permit.

**q) Undertaking**

Confirm that the undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPr and is applicable to both the Basic assessment report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

The undertaking required to meet the requirements of this section is provided at the end of the EMPR and is applicable to both the Basic Assessment Report and the Environmental Management Programme report.

**r) Financial Provision**

State the amount that is required to both manage and rehabilitate the environment in respect of rehabilitation.

**i) Explain how the aforesaid amount was derived**

The annual amount required to manage and rehabilitate the environment was estimated to be R587 500. Please see the explanation as to how this amount was derived at attached as Appendix H – Financial and Technical Competence Report.

**ii) Confirm that this amount can be provided from operating expenditure.**

(Confirm that the amount is anticipated to be an operating cost and is provided for as such in the Mining Work Programme, Financial and Technical Competence Report or Prospecting Work Programme as the case may be).

Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd will be responsible for the financial and technical aspects of the proposed mining project. The operating expenditure is provided for as such in the Financial and Technical Competence Report attached as Appendix H to this report.

**s) Specific Information required by the competent Authority**

**i) Compliance with the provisions of sections 24(4)(a) and (b) read with section 24 (3)(a) and (7) of the National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998). The EIA report must include the: -**

**(1) Impact on the socio-economic conditions of any directly affected person.**

(Provide the results of investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any directly affected person including the landowner, lawful occupier, or, where applicable, potential beneficiaries of any land restitution claim, attach the investigation report as an Appendix)

The following potential impacts were identified that may impact on socio-economic conditions of directly affected persons:

**Visual intrusion associated with the proposed mining activities:**

The viewshed analysis showed that the visual impact of the proposed aggregate / gravel mining operation will be of low significance, especially as no permanent structures will be constructed. The small scale of the proposed operation, and the mining area will be located between two hills in order to minimize the visual impact. Should the Applicant successfully rehabilitate the mining area (upon closure), no residual visual impact is expected upon closure of the mine.

■ **Dust nuisance caused as a result of the proposed mining activities:**

The proposed activity will contribute the emissions mechanical mining equipment to the receiving environment for the duration of the operational phase. Should the permit holder implement the mitigation measures proposed in this document and the EMPR the impact on the air quality of the surrounding environment is deemed to be of low significance and compatible with the current land use.

■ **Noise nuisance as a result of mining activities:**

The potential impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment is expected to be of low significance and representative of the traffic of the surrounding area. The distance of the proposed mining area from residential infrastructure further lessens the potential noise impact.

■ **Employment opportunities and socio-economic impact:**

The proposed labour component of the activity will be four employees. The operation will contribute to the local economy in the area, both directly and through the multiplier effect that its continued presence will create.

Equipment and supplies will be purchased locally, and wages are spent at local businesses, generating both jobs and income in the area. Although the employees are not resident on the site, they will be from the surrounding community.

**(2) Impact on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act.**

(Provide the results of investigation, assessment, and evaluation of the impact of the mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting on any national estate referred to in section 3(2) of the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act No 25 of 1999) with the exception of the national estate contemplated in section 3(2)(i)(vi) and (vii) of the Act, attach the investigation report as Appendix 2.19.2 and confirm that the applicable mitigation is reflected in 2.5.3; 2.11.6 and 2.12 herein).

As mentioned earlier, The National Web-Based Environmental Screening Tool classifies the Palaeontological Sensitivity Theme for the site as very high. However, according to the Palaeontological Heritage Comment (Appendix M), the area is considered to have low sensitivity, and no further specialist palaeontological monitoring or mitigation is recommended for this mining development. Nevertheless, a Chance Fossil Finds Protocol will be implemented

in the unlikely event that significant fossil material is discovered prior to or during excavation.

**t) Other matters required in terms of section 24(4)(a) and (b) of the Act.**

(the EAP managing the application must provide the competent authority with detailed, written proof of an investigation as required by section 24(4)(b)(i) of the Act and motivation if no reasonable or feasible alternatives, as contemplated in sub-regulation 22(2)(h), exist. The EAP must attach such motivation as Appendix 4)

Site Alternative 1, as discussed earlier, was identified during the assessment phase of the environmental impact assessment by the Applicant and project team, as the preferred and only viable site alternative. The Applicant will recover the aggregate / gravel by means of mechanical excavation with earthmoving equipment, crush, screen, and store it at the proposed mining area.

The no-go alternative entails no change to the status quo and is therefore a real alternative that must be considered. The aggregate / gravel to be mined at the site will be used in the building and construction industries, if however, the no-go alternative is implemented the Applicant will not be able to utilise the mineral present in the area.

## PART B

### ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME REPORT

#### 1. DRAFT ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME.

##### a) Details of the EAP,

(Confirm that the requirements for the provision of the details and expertise of the EAP are already included in Part A, section 1(a) herein as required).

The details and expertise of Zoë Norval of Greenmined Environmental that acts as EAP on this project has been included in Part A Section 1(a) as well as Appendix K as required.

##### b) Description of the Aspects of the Activity

(Confirm that the requirements to describe the aspects of the activity that are covered by the draft environmental management programme is already included in PART A, section (1)(h) herein as required).

The aspects of the activity that are covered by the draft environmental management programme has been described and included in Part A, section (1)(h).

##### c) Composite Map

(Provide a map (Attached as an Appendix) at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that any areas that should be avoided, including buffers)

As mentioned under Part A, section (1)(l)(ii) this map has been compiled and is attached as Appendix C to this document.

##### d) Description of impact management objectives including management statements

###### i) Determination of closure objectives.

(Ensure that the closure objectives are informed by the type of environment described in 2.4 herein)

The primary objective, at the end of the mine's life, is to obtain a closure certificate at minimum cost and in as short a time period as possible whilst still complying with the requirements of the Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002) [MPRDA]. To realise this, the following main objectives must be achieved:

- Remove all temporary infrastructure and waste from the mine as per the requirements of this EMPR and of the Provincial Department of Minerals and Petroleum Resources.
- Shape and contour disturbed areas in compliance with the EMPR.
- Ensure that permanent changes in topography (due to mining) are sustainable and do not cause erosion or the uncontrolled damming of surface water.

- Make all excavations safe.
- Use the topsoil effectively to promote the re-establishment of vegetation.
- Ensure that all rehabilitated areas are stable and self-sustaining in terms of vegetation cover.
- Eradicate all weeds/invader plant species by intensive management of the mining area.

The site-specific closure objectives are discussed in the attached Closure Plan (Appendix L), however, a summary of the closure objectives for the proposed mine were included below.

Rehabilitation will be implemented progressively throughout the operational phase, with final rehabilitation undertaken once mining activities have ceased. The objective is to achieve a stable, non-polluting landform that is compatible with the surrounding environment and suitable for continued low-intensity grazing. Due to the impracticality of importing large volumes of fill to restore the quarry area to its original topography, the rehabilitation option is to develop the quarry into a minor landscape feature. The proposed quarrying and rehabilitation procedures was formulated to optimise the extraction of the raw material while creating stable quarry sides that will not present an unreasonable safety risk once the mine was closed. Mining operations will be conducted in stages, corresponding to the creation of precision blasted quarry sides and benches towards the base of the working. The decommissioning phase and closure of the quarry will in addition to precision blasted quarry faces involve removal of all debris and rehabilitation of areas not rehabilitated during the operational phases of the project. This will comprise the scarification of compacted areas, reshaping of areas, topsoiling and regeneration of all prepared surfaces. All temporary infrastructure/equipment will be dissembled and all other infrastructural development such as haulage roads and stockpile areas will be rehabilitated. (see Appendix L for the Closure Plan).

The decommissioning activities will therefore consist of the following:

- Removal of all equipment, infrastructure, and temporary facilities;
- Removal of unused stockpiled material, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner;
- Shaping and stabilisation of disturbed areas to reduce erosion risk;
- Redistribution of available topsoil to support vegetation recovery;
- Implementation of measures to encourage natural revegetation; and

- Ongoing control of invasive alien plant species.

It is noted that, due to the nature of the mining activity, the excavated quarry void will not be backfilled to original ground levels. Rehabilitation will instead focus on ensuring that the final landform is stable, safe, and environmentally acceptable.

#### DMPR Final Rehabilitation Specifications

In compliance with the DMPR's closure objectives and Section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002):

- All structures and waste material will be removed from the site.
- Unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner, all stockpiled material must be removed from the site during the decommissioning phase.
- Disturbed or compacted areas will be ripped or scarified to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.
- Topsoil will be replaced to its original depth where available and stabilised with indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).
- No waste or scrap material may be buried or burned on site; all waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities.
- Photographic records will be taken at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation and submitted to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.
- The permit holder will apply for a Closure Certificate in accordance with Section 43(4) of the MPRDA and GN R.940 (NEMA) upon completion of rehabilitation.

#### Final rehabilitation:

- Rehabilitation of the surface area shall entail landscaping, levelling, top dressing, land preparation, seeding (if required) and maintenance, and invasive plant species clearing.
- All mining equipment, and other items used during the mining period must be removed from the site (section 44 of the MPRDA).
- Waste material of any description, including receptacles, scrap, rubble and tyres, must be removed entirely from the mining area and disposed of at a recognized landfill facility. It will not be permitted to be buried or burned on the site.
- The management of invasive plant species must be done in a sporadic manner during the life of the mining activities. Species regarded as Category 1a and 1b

invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto) will be eradicated from the site.

- Final rehabilitation shall be completed within a period specified by the Regional Manager.
- Once the mining area was rehabilitated the permit holder is required to submit a closure application to the Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources in accordance with section 43(4) of the MPRDA, 2002 that states: “An application for a closure certificate must be made to the Regional Manager in whose region the land in question is situated within 180 days of the occurrence of the lapsing, abandonment, cancellation, cessation, relinquishment or completion contemplated in subsection (3) and must be accompanied by the prescribed environmental risk report”. The Closure Application will be submitted in terms of Regulation 62 of the MPRDA, 2002, and Government Notice 940 of NEMA, 1998 (as amended).
- The quarry will follow a phased and controlled mining sequence that integrates environmental management from the outset. By maintaining a small active footprint, progressively rehabilitating disturbed areas, and adhering to the DMPR’s closure requirements, the operation will balance resource utilisation, local economic benefit, and long-term land stability.

#### Closure Requirements

- In accordance with the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002), all infrastructure and waste materials will be removed from site, and disturbed areas will be rehabilitated to an acceptable standard.
- Topsoil will be replaced where available, and surfaces will be stabilised to promote natural vegetation establishment. All waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities, and no on-site disposal will be permitted.
- A closure application will be submitted to the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy in accordance with Section 43 of the MPRDA and applicable NEMA regulations.

#### **ii) Volume and rate of water use required for the operation**

As no washing is proposed for this project, the applicant will exclusively use water for dust suppression purposes on the access road when needed. Approximately 10 000 litre water/day will be needed during the dry months. The water will be bought and transported to the mining area in a water truck that will moisten the problem area.

**iii) Has a water use licence has been applied for?**

Not applicable, as the proposed activity involves sourcing water off-site for transport to the mining area. The development footprint does not intersect any drainage lines and is located more than 100 m from any watercourse.

**iv) Impacts to be mitigated in their respective phases**

*Table 25: Impact to be mitigated in their respective phases*

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
(as listed in 2.11.1)	of operation in which activity will take place.  State; Planning and design, Pre-Construction, Operational, Rehabilitation, Closure, Post closure	(volumes, tonnages and hectares or m <sup>2</sup> )	(describe how each of the recommendations herein will remedy the cause of pollution or degradation and migration of pollutants)	(A description of how each of the recommendations herein will comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)	Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental management programme must be implemented. Measures must be implemented when required. With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunity. With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either – Upon cessation of the individual activity or Upon the cessation of mining, bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting as the case may be.
Demarcation of site with visible beacons.	Site Establishment phase	4.9 ha	Demarcation of the site will ensure that all employees are aware of the boundaries of the mining area, and that work stay within the approved area.	Mining of aggregate / gravel is only allowed within the boundaries of the approved area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> </ul>	Beacons need to be in place throughout the life of the activity.
Site establishment and infrastructure development.	Site Establishment & Operational Phase	4.9 ha	<b><u>Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining:</u></b>  The Applicant signed a lease agreement with the landowner to compensate for the loss of agricultural land for the duration of the mining period. If needed, mined-out/rehabilitated areas could revert back to	Use of agricultural land must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ Closure Plan (Appendix L)</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, and operational phases.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			agricultural use once the cover crop stabilised. The agreement has been renewed for another 5 years.		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> </ul>	Site Establishment & Operational Phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Visual Mitigation</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining must be contained to the boundaries of the permitted area.</li> <li>■ The site must have a neat appearance and be kept in good condition at all times.</li> <li>■ Mining equipment must be stored neatly in dedicated areas when not in use.</li> <li>■ The permit holder must limit vegetation removal (if applicable), and stripping of topsoil may only be done immediately prior to the use of a specific area.</li> <li>■ Upon closure the mining area must be rehabilitated and levelled to remove the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area.</li> </ul>	<p>Management of the mining area must be in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, and operational phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Cumulative Impacts</li> </ul>	Site Establishment phase	±4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Management of vegetation removal:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The mining boundaries must be clearly demarcated and all operations must be contained to the approved mining area. The area outside the mining boundaries must be declared a no-go area, and all staff must be educated accordingly.</li> <li>■ Permits for the removal of protected plant species (if required) must be obtained and kept on-site in the possession (at all times) of the flora search and rescue team.</li> <li>■ Cleared vegetation to be retained at any time may not be burned, but can be mulched and</li> </ul>	<p>Natural vegetated areas must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> <li>■ Western Cape Biodiversity Plan</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<p>stockpiled. Ideally the heaps can be covered with stockpiled topsoil and the material be retained for future site rehabilitation purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The on-site ECO must provide supervision and oversight of vegetation clearing activities and other activities which may cause damage to the environment, especially during the site establishment phase, when the majority of vegetation clearing is taking place.</li> <li>■ All vehicles must remain on demarcated roads and no unnecessary driving in the veld outside these areas may be allowed.</li> <li>■ No plants may be translocated or otherwise uprooted or disturbed for rehabilitation or other purposes without express permission from the ECO and without the relevant permits.</li> <li>■ No fires must be allowed on-site.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p>Site Establishment- and Decommissioning phase</p>	<p>±4.9 ha</p>	<p><b><u>Topsoil Management:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The upper 300 mm of the soil must be stripped and stockpiled.</li> <li>■ Topsoil is a valuable and essential resource for rehabilitation and it must therefore be managed carefully to conserve and maintain it throughout the stockpiling and rehabilitation processes.</li> <li>■ Topsoil stripping, stockpiling and re-spreading must be done in a systematic way. The mining plan have to be such that topsoil is stockpiled for the minimum possible time.</li> <li>■ The topsoil must be placed on a levelled area, within the mining footprint. No topsoil may be stockpiled in undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Topsoil stockpiles must be protected against losses by water and wind erosion. Stockpiles must be positioned so as not to be vulnerable</li> </ul>	<p>Topsoil must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA, 2004</li> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.</p>

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<p>to erosion by wind and water. The establishment of plants (weeds or a cover crop) on the stockpiles will help to prevent erosion.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Topsoil heaps may not exceed 1.5 m in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.</li> <li>■ The temporary topsoil stockpiles must be kept free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Storm- and runoff water must be diverted around the mining area to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ The stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread, to a depth of 300 mm, over the rehabilitated area upon closure of the site.</li> <li>■ The permit holder must strive to re-instate topsoil at a time of year when vegetation cover can be established as quickly as possible afterwards, so that erosion of returned topsoil by both rain and wind, before vegetation is established, is minimized. The best time of year is at the end of the rainy season, when there is moisture in the soil for vegetation establishment and the risk of heavy rainfall events is minimal.</li> <li>■ A cover crop must be planted, irrigated and established immediately after spreading of topsoil, to stabilize the soil and protect it from erosion. The cover crop must be fertilized for optimum biomass production. It is important that rehabilitation be taken up to the point of cover crop stabilization. Rehabilitation cannot be considered complete until the first cover crop is well established.</li> <li>■ The rehabilitated area must be monitored for erosion, and appropriately stabilized if any</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			erosion occurs for at least 12 months after reinstatement.		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	Site Establishment-, Operational- and Decommissioning phase	±1 ha	<p><b><u>Management of Invader Plant Species:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ An invasive plant species management plan (Appendix I) must be implemented at the site to ensure the management and control of all species regarded as Category 1a and 1b invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto). Weed/alien clearing must be done on an ongoing basis throughout the life of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ All stockpiles (topsoil) must be kept free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Management must take responsibility to control declared invader or exotic species on the rehabilitated areas. The following control methods can be used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The plants can be uprooted, felled or cut off and can be destroyed completely.</li> <li>▪ The plants can be treated chemically by a registered pest control officer (PCO) through the use of an herbicide recommended for use by the PCO in accordance with the directions for the use of such an herbicide.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Invader plants must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> <li>■ Invasive Plant Species Management Plan (Appendix I)</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate gravel .</li> </ul>	Site Establishment- and Operational phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Protection of Fauna:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The site manager must ensure no fauna is caught, killed, harmed, sold or played with.</li> <li>■ Any fauna directly threatened by the operational activities must be removed to a safe location by the ECO or other suitably qualified person.</li> </ul>	<p>Fauna must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, and operational phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All personnel must undergo environmental induction regarding fauna management and in particular awareness about not harming or collecting species such as snakes, tortoises and owls which are often persecuted out of superstition. Workers must be instructed to report any animals that may be trapped in the working area.</li> <li>■ No snares may be set or nests raided for eggs or young.</li> <li>■ All vehicles must adhere to a low speed limit (20 km/h is recommended) to avoid collisions with susceptible species such as snakes and tortoises.</li> <li>■ No litter, food or other foreign material may be thrown or left around the site. Such items must be kept in the site vehicles and daily removed to the site camp..</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> </ul>	Site Establishment, & Operational Phase.	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Archaeological, Heritage and Palaeontological Aspects:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All mining must be confined to the development footprint area.</li> <li>■ If during the pre-construction phase, construction, operations or closure phases of this project, any person employed by the developer, one of its subsidiaries, contractors and subcontractors, or service provider, finds any artefact of cultural significance or heritage site, this person must cease work at the site of the find and report this find to their immediate supervisor, and through their supervisor to the senior on-site manager.</li> <li>■ It is the responsibility of the senior on-site Manager to make an initial assessment of the</li> </ul>	<p>Cultural/heritage aspects on site must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NHRA, 1999</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, and operational phases.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<p>extent of the find, and confirm the extent of the work stoppage in that area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The senior on-site Manager must inform the ECO of the chance find and its immediate impact on operations. The ECO Chance Find Protocol are as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately (N.B. safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.</li> <li>2. Record key data while fossil remains are still in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo</li> <li>■ Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface</li> <li>■ Photograph fossil(s) in situ with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. If feasible to leave fossils in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> <li>■ Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. If not feasible to leave fossils in situ (emergency procedure only):                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Carefully remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)</li> <li>■ Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ul>		

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags</li> <li>▪ Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist</li> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> </ul> <p>5. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.</p> <p>6. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency.</p> <p>7. Specialist palaeontologist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage Resources Agency minimum standards.</li> </ul> <p>Work may only continue once the go-ahead was issued by SAHRA.</p>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stripping and stockpiling of</li> </ul>	Site Establishment-, Operational Phase	±1 ha	<p><b><u>Fugitive Dust Emission Mitigation:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The liberation of dust into the surrounding environment must be effectively controlled by</li> </ul>	Dust generation must be managed in accordance with the:	Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
<p>topsoil and/or overburden.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Drilling and blasting.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Processing, stockpiling and transporting of material.</li> </ul>			<p>the use of, inter alia, straw, water spraying and/or environmentally friendly dust-allaying agents that contains no PCB's (e.g. DAS products).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The site manager must ensure continuous assessment of all dust suppression equipment to confirm its effectiveness in addressing dust suppression.</li> <li>■ Speed on the haul roads must be limited to 20 km/h and 40 km/h on the access road to prevent the generation of excess dust.</li> <li>■ Areas devoid of vegetation, which could act as a dust source, must be minimized and vegetation removal may only be done immediately prior to mining.</li> <li>■ The crusher plant must have operational water sprayers to alleviate dust generation from the conveyor belts.</li> <li>■ Fines, blowing from the drop end of the crusher plant, can be minimized by attaching strips of used conveyor belts to the conveyor's end.</li> <li>■ Compacted dust must weekly be removed from the crusher plant to eliminate the dust source.</li> <li>■ Loads must be flattened to prevent spillage during transportation on public roads.</li> <li>■ Weather conditions must be taken into consideration upon commencement of daily operations. Limiting operations during very windy periods would reduce airborne dust and resulting impacts.</li> <li>■ All dust generating activities shall comply with the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827 promulgated in terms of NEM:AQA (Act 39 of 2004) and ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA. 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827</li> <li>■ ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012)</li> </ul>	

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Best practice measures shall be implemented during the stripping of topsoil, excavation, and transporting of material from site to minimize potential dust impacts.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel .</li> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Noise Handling:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The permit holder must ensure that employees and staff conduct themselves in an acceptable manner while on site.</li> <li>■ No loud music may be permitted at the mining area.</li> <li>■ All mining vehicles must be equipped with silencers and maintained in a road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act No 93 of 1996).</li> <li>■ Best practice measures shall be implemented in order to minimize potential noise impacts.</li> <li>■ A qualified occupational hygienist must be contracted to quarterly monitor and report on the personal noise exposure of the employees working at the mine. The monitoring must be done in accordance with the SANS 10083:2004 (Edition 5) sampling method as well as NEM:AQA, 2004, SANS 10103:2008.</li> </ul>	<p>Noise generation must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA. 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and/or overburden.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Processing, stockpiling and</li> </ul>	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Waste Management:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services may only take place in a demarcated service area of the permit holder. If emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop / service area, drip trays must be present. All waste products must be disposed of in a 200 litre closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal.</li> </ul>	<p>Mining related waste must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008: National norms and standards for the storage of waste (GN 926)</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998 (Section 30)</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
<p>transporting of material.</p> <p>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation phase.</p>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ablution facilities must be provided in the form of a chemical toilet. The chemical toilet must be placed outside the 1:100 year floodline of any open water resource, and must be serviced at least once every two weeks for the duration of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ The use of any temporary, chemical toilet facilities may not cause any pollution to water sources or pose a health hazard. In addition, no form of secondary pollution should arise from the disposal of refuse or sewage from the temporary, chemical toilets. Any pollution problems arising from the above are to be addressed immediately by the permit holder.</li> <li>■ If a diesel bowser is used on site, it must be equipped with a drip tray at all times. Drip trays must be used during each and every refuelling event. The nozzle of the bowser needs to rest in a sleeve to prevent dripping after refuelling.</li> <li>■ Site management must ensure drip trays are cleaned after each use. No dirty drip trays may be used on site.</li> <li>■ A spill kit must be available on-site which can be operated by trained employees for the adhoc remediation of minor chemical and hydrocarbon spillages.</li> <li>■ Any effluents containing oil, grease or other industrial substances must be collected in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility.</li> <li>■ Should spillage occur, such as oil or diesel leaking from a burst pipe, the contaminated soil must, within the first hour of occurrence, be collected in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<p>disposal at a recognized facility. Proof must be filed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A waste management plan must be compiled by site management and implemented on site. The plan must focus on the waste hierarchy of the NEM:WA.</li> <li>■ General waste must be contained in marked, sealable, refuse bins placed at a designated area, to be removed when filled to capacity to a recognised general waste landfill site.</li> <li>■ No waste may be buried or burned on the site.</li> <li>■ No chemicals or hazardous materials may be stored at the mining area.</li> <li>■ It is important that any significant spillage of chemicals, fuels etc. during the lifespan of the mining activities is reported to the Department of Water and Sanitation and other relevant authorities.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation.</li> </ul>	Operational Phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Erosion Control and Storm Water Management:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Clearing of vegetation must be limited to the proposed mining footprint and associated infrastructure. No clearing outside of the minimum required footprint to take place.</li> <li>■ Stormwater must be diverted around the topsoil heaps and mining areas to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Stockpiles must be protected from erosion, stored on flat areas where possible, and be surrounded by appropriate berms.</li> <li>■ When mining within steep slopes, it must be ensured that adequate slope protection is provided.</li> <li>■ During mining, the outflow of run-off water from the mining excavation must be controlled to prevent down-slope erosion. This must be</li> </ul>	<p>Storm water must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> </ul>	Throughout the operational phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<p>done by way of the construction of temporary banks and ditches that will direct run-off water (if needed). These must be in place at any points where overflow out of the excavation might occur.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Roads and other disturbed areas within the project area must be regularly monitored for erosion and problem areas must receive follow-up monitoring to assess the success of the remediation.</li> <li>■ Any erosion problems within the mining area as a result of the mining activities observed must be rectified immediately (within 48 hours) and monitored thereafter to ensure that it does not re-occur.</li> <li>■ Mining must be conducted only in accordance with the Best Practice Guideline for small scale mining that relates to storm water management, erosion and sediment control and waste management, developed by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), and any other conditions which that Department may impose: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Clean water (e.g. rainwater) must be kept clean and be routed to a natural watercourse by a system separate from the dirty water system. You must prevent clean water from running or spilling into dirty water systems.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Polluting activities including storage of mining fleet, equipment wash down facilities and vehicle maintenance yards must be restricted to the workshop areas and must be undertaken on impermeable hard standing surfaces, which are formally drained to a dirty water drainage system at the site.</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All fuels and chemicals stored or used on site must be contained within fit for purpose containers and stored within designated storage areas. In order to prevent pollution of the surrounding environment during an accidental spillage, the designated storage areas must be situated on an impermeable surface and must feature a perimeter bund and a drainage sump. The volume of the bund and sump must be sized to contain at least 110% of the total volume of the fuel and chemicals being stored within the designated storage area. The storage areas must feature a roof to prevent inflow of rainwater, which would require the sump to be emptied more frequently.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	Operational Phase	±1 ha	<p><b><u>Access Road Mitigation:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Storm water must be diverted around the access road to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Vehicular movement must be restricted to the existing access road to prevent crisscrossing of tracks through undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Rutting and erosion of the access road caused as a direct result of the mining activities must be repaired by the permit holder.</li> <li>■ Overloading of the truck must be prevented, and proof of load weights must be filed for auditing purposes.</li> </ul>	<p>The access road must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>	Throughout the operational phase.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Drilling and blasting.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> </ul>	Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Management of health and safety risks:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Workers must have access to the correct personal protection equipment (PPE) as required by law.</li> <li>■ Sanitary facilities must be located within 100 m from any point of work.</li> </ul>	<p>Health and safety aspects must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MHSA, 1996</li> <li>■ OHSA, 1993</li> <li>■ OHSAS, 18001</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, operational and decommissioning phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation phase.</li> </ul>			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All operations must comply with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996).</li> <li>■ The type, duration and timing of the blasting procedures must be planned with due cognizance of other land users and structures in the vicinity.</li> <li>■ The surrounding landowners must be informed in writing ahead of each blasting event.</li> <li>■ The compliance of ground vibration and airblast levels must be monitored to USBM standards with each blasting event.</li> <li>■ A vibro recorder must be used to record all blasts.</li> <li>■ Audible warning of a pending blast must be given at least 3 minutes in advance of the blast.</li> <li>■ Measures to limit flyrock must be taken. All flyrock (of diameter 150 mm and larger) which falls beyond the working area, together with the rock spill must be collected and removed.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	Site Establishment, & Operational Phase.	±500 m <sup>2</sup>	<p><b><u>Storage/Handling of Hazardous Substances/Chemicals:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Chemical storage areas must be placed on level ground to prevent offsite migration of any spilled product.</li> <li>■ The floor of the storage area must be impermeable to prevent seepage of spilled products into the ground or ground water.</li> <li>■ Access to the chemicals/substances must be controlled and require prior notification of an appropriate staff member.</li> <li>■ A Hazardous Substances Register must be maintained, and Safety Data Sheets (SDS) must be kept current for all chemicals used on site.</li> </ul>	Chemicals/hazardous substances must be stored in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ HSA,1973</li> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008</li> </ul>	Throughout the site establishment-, and operational phases.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Any fuel/used oil tanks must have secondary containment in the form of an impermeable bund wall and base within which the tanks sits, raised above the floor, on plinths. The bund capacity must be sufficient to contain 110% of the tank's maximum capacity. The distance and height of the bund wall relative to that of the tank must also be taken into consideration to ensure that any spillage does not result in hydrocarbons/other substances spouting beyond the confines of the bund.</li> <li>■ The site manager must establish a formal inspection routine to check all equipment in the bund area, as well as the bund area itself for malfunctions or leakages. The bund area must be inspected at least weekly and any accumulated rainwater removed and handled as contaminated water. All valves and outlets must be checked to ensure that its intact and closed securely.</li> <li>■ The bund base must slope towards an oil sump of sufficient size. Contaminated water may not be allowed to mix with clean water, and must be contained until it is collected by a registered hazardous waste handling contractor or disposed of at a registered hazardous waste handling facility.</li> <li>■ Drip trays must be used underneath all stationary equipment or vehicles. Used drip trays must be placed within a bunded area and are not be stored on bare soil. The waste water originating from the cleaning of drip trays must be discarded into the oil sump.</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation phase.</li> </ul>	Decommissioning Phase	4.9 ha	<p><b><u>Rehabilitation/landscaping of mining area:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The excavated area must serve as a stable, non-polluting landform that is compatible with the surrounding environment and suitable for continued low-intensity grazing.</li> <li>■ Remove all structures and waste material from the site.</li> <li>■ Remove all stockpiled material from the site during the decommissioning phase, unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner.</li> <li>■ Rip or scarify disturbed or compacted areas to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.</li> <li>■ Replace topsoil to its original depth where available and stabilise it with an indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).</li> <li>■ Do not bury or burn any waste or scrap material on site; dispose of all waste at licensed facilities.</li> <li>■ Take photographic records at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation, and submit them to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.</li> <li>■ Conduct a soil analysis and correct any deleterious effects arising from mining operations if vegetation re-establishment is unacceptably slow, as determined by a reasonable assessment, and reseed the area with a vegetation seed mix specified by the Regional Manager.</li> <li>■ Ensure that the site have a neat appearance and is kept in good condition at all times.</li> </ul>	<p>Rehabilitation of the mining area must be in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ CARA, 1983</li> <li>❖ NEM:BA, 2004</li> <li>❖ MPRDA, 2002</li> </ul> <p>Closure Plan (Appendix L)</p>	Throughout the decommissioning phase.

ACTIVITIES	PHASE	SIZE AND SCALE OF DISTURBANCE	MITIGATION MEASURES	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Store mining equipment in a dedicated area when not in use.</li> <li>■ Limit vegetation removal, and only strip topsoil immediately prior to the mining/use of a specific area.</li> <li>■ Contain excavations to the approved footprint of the permitted area.</li> <li>■ Upon closure, rehabilitate the site to ensure that the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area is reduced to the minimum.</li> <li>■ On completion of operations, deal with all structures or objects in accordance with section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).</li> <li>■</li> </ul>		

## e) Impact Management Outcomes

(A description of impact management outcomes, identifying the standard of impact management required for the aspects contemplated in paragraph ());

Table 26: Impact Management Outcomes

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	MITIGATION TYPE	STANDARD TO BE ACHIEVED
<p>whether listed or not listed (E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc..etc.)</p>	<p>(e.g. dust, noise, drainage surface disturbance, fly rock, surface water contamination, groundwater contamination, air pollution etc...etc..)</p>		<p>In which impact is anticipated  (e.g. Construction, commissioning, operational Decommissioning, closure, post-closure))</p>	<p>(modify, remedy, control, or stop) through (e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity etc...etc..)  E.g.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Modify through alternative method.</li> <li>• Control through noise control</li> <li>• Control through management and monitoring</li> </ul> Remedy through rehabilitation.</p>	<p>(Impact avoided, noise levels, dust levels, rehabilitation standards, end use objectives) etc.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Demarcation of site with visible beacons.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ No impact could be identified other than the beacons being outside the boundaries of the approved mining area.</li> </ul>	<p>N/A</p>	<p>Site Establishment phase</p>	<p>Control through management and monitoring.</p>	<p>Mining of aggregate / gravel is only allowed within the boundaries of the approved area.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> </ul> </p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment.</li> </ul>	<p>The visual impact may affect the aesthetics of the landscape.</p>	<p>Site Establishment &amp; Operational Phase</p>	<p><u>Control:</u> Implementing proper housekeeping.</p>	<p>Management of the mining area must be in accordance with the:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> </ul> </p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loss of agricultural land for duration of mining.</li> </ul>	<p>The impact may affect the agricultural</p>	<p>Site Establishment &amp; Operational Phase</p>	<p>Should the proposed project be approved, the operation will temporarily interrupt the agricultural activities of the footprint area, only to be reversed upon the closure of the mine.</p>	<p>Use of agricultural land must be managed in accordance with the:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> </ul> </p>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	MITIGATION TYPE	STANDARD TO BE ACHIEVED
		opportunities of the property.		The impact could be controlled through progressive rehabilitation.	Closure Plan (Appendix L)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loss of stockpiled topsoil during mining and stockpiling.</li> <li>■ Potential erosion of denuded areas.</li> <li>■ Facilitation of erosion due to mining activities.</li> <li>■ Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation.</li> </ul>	Loss of topsoil will affect the rehabilitation success upon closure of the mine.	Site Establishment-, Operational and Decommissioning Phase	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and storm water management.	Topsoil must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA, 2004</li> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with invader plant species.</li> <li>■ Infestation of denuded areas with invader plant species</li> <li>■ Infestation of the reinstated area with invader plant species.</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment.	Site Establishment-, Operational- and Decommissioning phase	<u>Control:</u> Implementing soil- and storm water management.	Invader plants must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> <li>■ Invasive Plant Species Management Plan (Appendix I)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and overburden.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area.</li> <li>■ Potential impact on local fauna due to disturbance and loss of available habitat</li> </ul>	This will impact on the biodiversity of the receiving environment.	Site Establishment- and Operational phase	<u>Control &amp; Stop:</u> Implementing good management practices.	Fauna must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	MITIGATION TYPE	STANDARD TO BE ACHIEVED
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and/or overburden.</li> <li>■ Drilling and blasting.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Processing, stockpiling and transporting of material.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> </ul>	<p>Increased dust generation will impact on the air quality of the receiving environment.</p>	<p>Site Establishment- and Operational Phase</p>	<p><u>Control:</u> Dust suppression methods and proper housekeeping.</p>	<p>Dust generation must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA. 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827</li> <li>■ ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stripping and stockpiling of topsoil and/or overburden.</li> <li>■ Drilling and blasting.</li> <li>■ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>■ Processing, stockpiling and transporting of material.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of blasting.</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance stemming from operation of the processing plant.</li> </ul>	<p>Should noise levels become excessive it may have an impact on the noise ambiance of the receiving environment.</p>	<p>Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase</p>	<p><u>Control:</u> Noise suppression methods and proper housekeeping.</p>	<p>Noise generation on site must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA, 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel .</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills.</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with littering and hydrocarbon spills.</li> </ul>	<p>Contamination of the footprint area will negatively impact the soil, surface runoff and potentially the groundwater. It will also incur additional costs to the permit holder.</p>	<p>Site Establishment-, Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase</p>	<p><u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Proper housekeeping and implementation of an emergency response plan and waste management plan.</p>	<p>Mining related waste must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008: National norms and standards for the storage of waste (GN 926)</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998 (Section 30)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment and infrastructure development.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on area/infrastructure of</li> </ul>	<p>This could impact on the cultural and heritage legacy of</p>	<p>Operational Phase</p>	<p><u>Control &amp; Stop:</u> Implementing good management practices, as well as the chance-find protocol.</p>	<p>Cultural/heritage aspects must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NHRA, 1999</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	ASPECTS AFFECTED	PHASE	MITIGATION TYPE	STANDARD TO BE ACHIEVED
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> </ul>	heritage or cultural concern.	the receiving environment.			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Deterioration of the access road to the mining area.</li> </ul>	Collapse of the road infrastructure will affect the landowner.	Operational Phase	<u>Control &amp; Remedy:</u> Maintaining the access road for the duration of the operational phase, as well as leaving it in a representative or better condition than prior to mining.	The access road must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Drilling and blasting.</li> <li>█ Excavation, loading and hauling to the processing plant.</li> <li>█ Sloping and landscaping during rehabilitation phase.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Health and safety risk posed by blasting activities.</li> <li>█ Unsafe working environment for employees.</li> <li>█ Safety risk posed by un-sloped areas.</li> </ul>	An unsafe working environment affects the labour force, as well as pose a threat to animals and humans that may enter the mining footprint.	Operational-, and Decommissioning Phase	<u>Stop &amp; Control:</u> Adherence to the blasting rules and regulations, demarcation of the mining area and proper housekeeping.	Health and safety aspects on site must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ MHSA, 1996</li> <li>█ OHSA, 1993</li> <li>█ OHSAS 18001</li> </ul> USBM standards
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ Overloading of trucks having an impact on the public roads.</li> </ul>	Overloading will negatively affect the roads in the vicinity of the mining area.	Operational Phase	<u>Control:</u> Proper site management.	Load weights must be managed in accordance with the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>█ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>

## f) Impact Management Actions

(A description of impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management objectives and outcomes in paragraph (c) and (d) will be achieved)

Table 27: Impact Management Actions

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
<p>whether listed or not listed (E.g. Excavations, blasting, stockpiles, discard dumps or dams, Loading, hauling and transport, Water supply dams and boreholes, accommodation, offices, ablution, stores, workshops, processing plant, storm water control, berms, roads, pipelines, power lines, conveyors, etc...etc..etc.)</p>	<p>(e.g. dust, noise, drainage surface disturbance, fly rock, surface water contamination, groundwater contamination, air pollution etc...etc..)</p>	<p>(modify, remedy, control, or stop) through (e.g. noise control measures, storm-water control, dust control, rehabilitation, design measures, blasting controls, avoidance, relocation, alternative activity etc... etc.)</p> <p>E.g.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Modify through alternative method.</li> <li>• Control through noise control</li> <li>• Control through management and monitoring</li> </ul> <p>Remedy through rehabilitation.</p>	<p>Describe the time period when the measures in the environmental management programme must be implemented Measures must be implemented when required.</p> <p>With regard to Rehabilitation specifically this must take place at the earliest opportunity. With regard to Rehabilitation, therefore state either: Upon cessation of the individual activity Or. Upon the cessation of mining bulk sampling or alluvial diamond prospecting as the case may be.</p>	<p>(A description of how each of the recommendations in 2.11.6 read with 2.12 and 2.15.2 herein will comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices that have been identified by Competent Authorities)</p>
<p>Demarcation of site with visible beacons.</p>	<p>No impact could be identified other than the beacons being outside the boundaries of the approved mining area.</p>	<p>Demarcation of the site will ensure that all employees are aware of the boundaries of the mining area, and that work stay within the approved area.</p>	<p>Beacons need to be in place throughout the life of the activity.</p>	<p>Mining of aggregate / gravel is only allowed within the boundaries of the approved area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MPRDA, 2008</li> <li>• NEMA, 1998</li> </ul>
<p>Site establishment</p>	<p>Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment.</p>	<p><b>Visual Mitigation</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mining must be contained to the boundaries of the permitted area.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, site and operational phase.</p>	<p>Management of the mining area must be in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MPRDA, 2008</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The site must have a neat appearance and be kept in good condition at all times.</li> <li>■ The permit holder must limit vegetation removal (if applicable), and stripping of topsoil may only be done immediately prior to the use of a specific area.</li> <li>■ Upon closure the mining area must be rehabilitated and levelled to remove the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loss of topsoil and fertility during mining and stockpiling</li> <li>■ Loss of stockpiled material due to ineffective storm water control.</li> <li>■ Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Topsoil Management:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The upper 300 mm of the soil must be stripped and stockpiled.</li> <li>■ Topsoil is a valuable and essential resource for rehabilitation and it must therefore be managed carefully to conserve and maintain it throughout the stockpiling and rehabilitation processes.</li> <li>■ Topsoil stripping, stockpiling and re-spreading must be done in a systematic way. The mining plan have to be such that topsoil is stockpiled for the minimum possible time.</li> <li>■ The topsoil must be placed on a levelled area, within the mining footprint. No topsoil may be stockpiled in undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Topsoil stockpiles must be protected against losses by water and wind erosion. Stockpiles must be positioned so as not to be vulnerable to erosion by wind and water. The establishment of plants (weeds or a cover crop) on the stockpiles will help to prevent erosion.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Topsoil must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA, 2004</li> <li>■ MPRDA, 2008</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Topsoil heaps may not exceed 1.5 m in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.</li> <li>■ The temporary topsoil stockpiles must be kept free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Storm- and runoff water must be diverted around the mining area to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ The stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread, to a depth of 300 mm, over the rehabilitated area upon closure of the site.</li> <li>■ The permit holder must strive to re-instate topsoil at a time of year when vegetation cover can be established as quickly as possible afterwards, so that erosion of returned topsoil by both rain and wind, before vegetation is established, is minimized. The best time of year is at the end of the rainy season, when there is moisture in the soil for vegetation establishment and the risk of heavy rainfall events is minimal.</li> <li>■ A cover crop must be planted, irrigated and established immediately after spreading of topsoil, to stabilize the soil and protect it from erosion. The cover crop must be fertilized for optimum biomass production. It is important that rehabilitation be taken up to the point of cover crop stabilization. Rehabilitation cannot be considered complete until the first cover crop is well established.</li> <li>■ The rehabilitated area must be monitored for erosion, and appropriately stabilized if any erosion occurs for at least 12 months after reinstatement.</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with invader plant species.</li> <li>■ Infestation of denuded areas with invader plant species</li> <li>■ Infestation of the reinstated area with invader plant species.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Management of Invader Plant Species:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ An invasive plant species management plan (Appendix I) must be implemented at the site to ensure the management and control of all species regarded as Category 1a and 1b invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto). Weed/alien clearing must be done on an ongoing basis throughout the life of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ All stockpiles (topsoil) must be kept free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Management must take responsibility to control declared invader or exotic species on the rehabilitated areas. The following control methods can be used: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ The plants can be uprooted, felled or cut off and can be destroyed completely.</li> <li>▪ The plants can be treated chemically by a registered pest control officer (PCO) through the use of an herbicide recommended for use by the PCO in accordance with the directions for the use of such an herbicide.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Invader plants must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> <li>■ Invasive Plant Species Management Plan (Appendix I)</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Protection of Fauna:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The site manager must ensure no fauna is caught, killed, harmed, sold or played with.</li> <li>■ Workers must be instructed to report any animals that may be trapped in the working area.</li> <li>■ No snares may be set or nests raided for eggs or young.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site and operational phase.</p>	<p>Fauna must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:BA 2004</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the disturbance of soil</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Fugitive Dust Emission Mitigation:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The liberation of dust into the surrounding environment must be effectively controlled by the use of, inter alia, straw, water spraying and/or environmentally friendly dust-allaying agents that contains no PCB's (e.g. DAS products).</li> <li>■ The site manager must ensure continuous assessment of all dust suppression equipment to confirm its effectiveness in addressing dust suppression.</li> <li>■ Speed on the access road must be limited to 40 km/h to prevent the generation of excess dust.</li> <li>■ Areas devoid of vegetation, which could act as a dust source, must be minimized and vegetation removal may only be done immediately prior to mining.</li> <li>■ Loads must be flattened and covered to ensure that minimal spillage of material takes place during transportation, also preventing windblown dust.</li> <li>■ Weather conditions must be taken into consideration upon commencement of daily operations. Limiting operations during very windy periods would reduce airborne dust and resulting impacts.</li> <li>■ All dust generating activities shall comply with the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827 promulgated in terms of NEM:AQA (Act 39 of 2004) and ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012).</li> <li>■ Best practice measures shall be implemented during the stripping of topsoil, loading, and transporting of the aggregate /</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational, and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Dust generation must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA. 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827</li> <li>■ ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012)</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<p>gravel from site to minimize potential dust impacts.</p>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance generated by earthmoving machinery</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the decommissioning activities.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Noise Handling:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The permit holder must ensure that employees and staff conduct themselves in an acceptable manner while on site.</li> <li>■ No loud music may be permitted at the mining area.</li> <li>■ All mining vehicles must be equipped with silencers and maintained in a road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act No 93 of 1996).</li> <li>■ Best practice measures shall be implemented in order to minimize potential noise impacts.</li> <li>■ A qualified occupational hygienist must be contracted to quarterly monitor and report on the personal noise exposure of the employees working at the mine. The monitoring must be done in accordance with the SANS 10083:2004 (Edition 5) sampling method as well as NEM:AQA, 2004, SANS 10103:2008.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Noise generation must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NEM:AQA. 2004 Regulation 6(1)</li> <li>■ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills.</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with littering and hydrocarbon spills.</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with litter left at the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Waste Management:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services may only take place in a demarcated service area of the permit holder. If emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop / service area, drip trays must be present. All waste products must be disposed of in a 200 litre closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Mining related waste must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008</li> <li>■ NEM:WA, 2008: National norms and standards for the storage of waste (GN 926)</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998 (Section 30)</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ablution facilities must be provided in the form of a chemical toilet. The chemical toilet must be placed outside the 1:100 year floodline of any open water resource, and must be serviced at least once every two weeks for the duration of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ The use of any temporary, chemical toilet facilities may not cause any pollution to water sources or pose a health hazard. In addition, no form of secondary pollution should arise from the disposal of refuse or sewage from the temporary, chemical toilets. Any pollution problems arising from the above are to be addressed immediately by the permit holder.</li> <li>■ If a diesel bowser is used on site, it must be equipped with a drip tray at all times. Drip trays must be used during each and every refuelling event. The nozzle of the bowser needs to rest in a sleeve to prevent dripping after refuelling.</li> <li>■ Site management must ensure drip trays are cleaned after each use. No dirty drip trays may be used on site.</li> <li>■ A spill kit must be available on-site which can be operated by trained employees for the adhoc remediation of minor chemical and hydrocarbon spillages.</li> <li>■ Any effluents containing oil, grease or other industrial substances must be collected in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility.</li> <li>■ Should spillage occur, such as oil or diesel leaking from a burst pipe, the contaminated soil must, within the first hour of occurrence,</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<p>be collected in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility. Proof must be filed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A waste management plan must be compiled by site management and implemented on site. The plan must focus on the waste hierarchy of the NEM:WA.</li> <li>■ General waste must be contained in marked, sealable, refuse bins placed at a designated area, to be removed when filled to capacity to a recognised general waste landfill site.</li> <li>■ No waste may be buried or burned on the site.</li> <li>■ No chemicals or hazardous materials may be stored at the mining area.</li> <li>■ It is important that any significant spillage of chemicals, fuels etc. during the lifespan of the mining activities is reported to the Department of Water and Sanitation and other relevant authorities.</li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on area/infrastructure of heritage or cultural concern.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Archaeological, Heritage and Palaeontological Aspects:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All mining must be confined to the development footprint area.</li> <li>■ If during the pre-construction phase, construction, operations or closure phases of this project, any person employed by the developer, one of its subsidiaries, contractors and subcontractors, or service provider, finds any artefact of cultural significance or heritage site, this person must cease work at the site of the find and report this find to their immediate supervisor, and through their supervisor to the senior on-site manager.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the operational phase.</p>	<p>Cultural/heritage aspects must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NHRA, 1999</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ It is the responsibility of the senior on-site Manager to make an initial assessment of the extent of the find, and confirm the extent of the work stoppage in that area.</li> <li>■ The senior on-site Manager must inform the ECO of the chance find and its immediate impact on operations. The ECO Chance Find Protocol are as follows:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately (N.B. safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.</li> <li>2. Record key data while fossil remains are still in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo</li> <li>▪ Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface</li> <li>▪ Photograph fossil(s) in situ with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. If feasible to leave fossils in situ:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> <li>▪ Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. If not feasible to leave fossils in situ (emergency procedure only):                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carefully remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original</li> </ul> </li> </ol> </li> </ul>		

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
		<p>sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale</li> <li>▪ Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags</li> <li>▪ Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist</li> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> </ul> <p>5. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.</p> <p>6. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency.</p> <p>7. Specialist palaeontologist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage Work may only continue once the go-ahead was issued by SAHRA.</li> </ul>		

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loss of stockpiled material due to ineffective storm water control.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Storm Water Mitigation:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Storm water must be diverted around the topsoil heaps and mining area to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Mining must be conducted only in accordance with the Best Practice Guideline for small scale mining that relates to storm water management, erosion and sediment control and waste management, developed by the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS), and any other conditions which that Department may impose: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Clean water (e.g. rainwater) must be kept clean and be routed to a natural watercourse by a system separate from the dirty water system. You must prevent clean water from running or spilling into dirty water systems.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the operational phase.</p>	<p>Storm water must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ CARA, 1983</li> <li>■ NEMA, 1998</li> <li>■ NWA, 1998</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Deterioration of the access road to the mining area.</li> <li>■ Overloading of trucks having an impact on the public roads.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Access Road Mitigation:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Storm water must be diverted around the access road to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Vehicular movement must be restricted to the existing access road to prevent crisscrossing of tracks through undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Rutting and erosion of the access road caused as a direct result of the mining activities must be repaired by the permit holder.</li> <li>■ Overloading of the truck must be prevented, and proof of load weights must be filed for auditing purposes.</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the operational phase.</p>	<p>The access road must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NRTA, 1996</li> </ul>

ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL IMPACT	MITIGATION TYPE	TIME PERIOD FOR IMPLEMENTATION	COMPLIANCE WITH STANDARDS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential health and safety risk to employees.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Management of Health and Safety Risks:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Adequate ablution facilities and water for human consumption must daily be available on site.</li> <li>■ Workers must have access to the correct personal protection equipment (PPE) as required by law.</li> <li>■ All operations must comply with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996).</li> </ul>	<p>Throughout the site establishment-, operational and decommissioning phase.</p>	<p>Health and safety aspects must be managed in accordance with the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ MHSA, 1996</li> <li>■ OHSA, 1993</li> <li>■ OHSAS, 18001</li> </ul>

**i) Financial Provision**

**(1) Determination of the amount of Financial Provision.**

- (a) Describe the closure objectives and the extent to which they have been aligned to the baseline environment described under the Regulation.**

The closure objectives entail removing the mining machinery from the site. Removal of the crushing and screening plant, containers, weighbridge and chemical toilet from the mining area, removal/levelling of all stockpiled material and the landscaping of the mining area to allow the replacement of stockpiled topsoil. The reinstated area will be vegetated, and invasive plant species will be controlled during a 12 months' aftercare period to address germination of problem plants in the area. The Applicant will comply with the minimum closure objectives as prescribed by DMPR.

- (b) Confirm specifically that the environmental objectives in relation to closure have been consulted with landowner and interested and affected parties.**

This report, the Draft Basic Assessment Report, includes all the environmental objectives in relation to closure and will be made available for perusal by the landowner, registered I&AP's and stakeholders over a 30-days commenting period.

- (c) Provide a rehabilitation plan that describes and shows the scale and aerial extent of the main mining activities, including the anticipated mining area at the time of closure.**

The requested rehabilitation plan is attached as Appendix E.

- (d) Explain why it can be confirmed that the rehabilitation plan is compatible with the closure objectives.**

The decommissioning phase will entail the final rehabilitation of the mining site. Final landscaping, levelling and top dressing will be done. The rehabilitation of the mining area as indicated on the rehabilitation plan attached as Appendix L will comply with the minimum closure objectives as prescribed by DMPR and detailed below, and therefore is deemed to be compatible:

Rehabilitation will be implemented progressively throughout the operational phase, with final rehabilitation undertaken once mining activities have ceased. The objective is to achieve a stable, non-polluting landform that is compatible with the surrounding environment and suitable for continued low-intensity grazing. Due to the impracticality of importing large volumes of fill to restore the quarry area to its original topography, the rehabilitation option is to develop the quarry into a minor landscape feature. The proposed quarrying and rehabilitation procedures was formulated to optimise the extraction of the raw material while creating stable quarry sides that will not present an unreasonable safety risk once the mine was closed. Mining operations will be conducted in stages, corresponding to the creation of precision blasted quarry sides and benches towards the base of the working. The decommissioning phase and closure of the quarry will in addition to precision blasted quarry faces involve removal of all debris and rehabilitation of areas not rehabilitated during the operational phases of the project. This will comprise the scarification of compacted areas, reshaping of areas, topsoiling and regeneration of all prepared surfaces. All temporary infrastructure/equipment will be disassembled and all other infrastructural development such as haulage roads and stockpile areas will be rehabilitated. (see Appendix L for the Closure Plan).

The decommissioning activities will therefore consist of the following:

- Removal of all equipment, infrastructure, and temporary facilities;
- Removal of unused stockpiled material, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner;
- Shaping and stabilisation of disturbed areas to reduce erosion risk;
- Redistribution of available topsoil to support vegetation recovery;
- Implementation of measures to encourage natural revegetation; and
- Ongoing control of invasive alien plant species.

It is noted that, due to the nature of the mining activity, the excavated quarry void will not be backfilled to original ground levels. Rehabilitation will instead focus on ensuring that the final landform is stable, safe, and environmentally acceptable.

#### DMPR Final Rehabilitation Specifications

In compliance with the DMPR's closure objectives and Section 44 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002):

- All structures and waste material will be removed from the site.
- Unless otherwise agreed to in writing by the landowner, all stockpiled material must be removed from the site during the decommissioning phase.
- Disturbed or compacted areas will be ripped or scarified to a minimum depth of 200 mm to encourage infiltration and root establishment.
- Topsoil will be replaced to its original depth where available and stabilised with indigenous seed mix suited to the local biome (if applicable).
- No waste or scrap material may be buried or burned on site; all waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities.
- Photographic records will be taken at fixed points before, during, and after rehabilitation and submitted to the DMPR Regional Manager as proof of compliance.
- The permit holder will apply for a Closure Certificate in accordance with Section 43(4) of the MPRDA and GN R.940 (NEMA) upon completion of rehabilitation.

Final rehabilitation:

- Rehabilitation of the surface area shall entail landscaping, levelling, top dressing, land preparation, seeding (if required) and maintenance, and invasive plant species clearing.
- All mining equipment, and other items used during the mining period must be removed from the site (section 44 of the MPRDA).
- Waste material of any description, including receptacles, scrap, rubble and tyres, must be removed entirely from the mining area and disposed of at a recognized landfill facility. It will not be permitted to be buried or burned on the site.
- The management of invasive plant species must be done in a sporadic manner during the life of the mining activities. Species regarded as Category 1a and 1b invasive species in terms of NEM:BA (National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act 10 of 2004 and regulations applicable thereto) will be eradicated from the site.
- Final rehabilitation shall be completed within a period specified by the Regional Manager.

- Once the mining area was rehabilitated the permit holder is required to submit a closure application to the Department of Mineral and Petroleum Resources in accordance with section 43(4) of the MPRDA, 2002 that states: “An application for a closure certificate must be made to the Regional Manager in whose region the land in question is situated within 180 days of the occurrence of the lapsing, abandonment, cancellation, cessation, relinquishment or completion contemplated in subsection (3) and must be accompanied by the prescribed environmental risk report”. The Closure Application will be submitted in terms of Regulation 62 of the MPRDA, 2002, and Government Notice 940 of NEMA, 1998 (as amended).
- The quarry will follow a phased and controlled mining sequence that integrates environmental management from the outset. By maintaining a small active footprint, progressively rehabilitating disturbed areas, and adhering to the DMPR’s closure requirements, the operation will balance resource utilisation, local economic benefit, and long-term land stability.

#### Closure Requirements

- In accordance with the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002), all infrastructure and waste materials will be removed from site, and disturbed areas will be rehabilitated to an acceptable standard.
  - Topsoil will be replaced where available, and surfaces will be stabilised to promote natural vegetation establishment. All waste will be disposed of at licensed facilities, and no on-site disposal will be permitted.
  - A closure application will be submitted to the Department of Mineral Resources and Energy in accordance with Section 43 of the MPRDA and applicable NEMA regulations.
- (e) Calculate and state the quantum of the financial provision required to manage and rehabilitate the environment in accordance with the applicable guideline.**

The calculation of the quantum for financial provision was according to Section B of the working manual.

#### Mine type and saleable mineral by-product

According to Tables B.12, B.13 and B.14

Mine type	Aggregate / gravel
Saleable mineral by-product	None

### **Risk ranking**

According to Tables B.12, B.13 and B.14

Primary risk ranking (either Table B.12 or B.13)	C (Low risk).
Revised risk ranking (B.14)	N/A

### **Environmental sensitivity of the mine area**

According to Table B.4

Environmental sensitivity of the mine area	Low
--	-----

### **Level of information**

According to Step 4.2:

Level of information available	Limited
--------------------------------	---------

### **Identify closure components**

According to Table B.5 and site-specific conditions

Component No.	Main description	Applicability of closure components (Circle Yes or No)	
1	Dismantling of processing plant and related structures (including overland conveyors and power lines)	-	NO
2(A)	Demolition of steel buildings and structures	-	NO
2(B)	Demolition of reinforced concrete buildings and structures	-	NO
3	Rehabilitation of access roads	-	NO
4(A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of electrified railway lines	-	NO
4(B)	Demolition and rehabilitation of non-electrified railway lines	-	NO
5	Demolition of housing and facilities	-	NO
6	Opencast rehabilitation including final voids and ramps	YES	-
7	Sealing of shafts, adits and inclines	-	NO
8(A)	Rehabilitation of overburden and spoils	YES	-
8(B)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (basic, salt-producing)	-	NO
8(C)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (acidic, metal-rich)	-	NO

Component No.	Main description	Applicability of closure components (Circle Yes or No)	
		YES	NO
9	Rehabilitation of subsided areas	-	NO
10	General surface rehabilitation, including grassing of all denuded areas	YES	-
11	River diversions	-	NO
12	Fencing	-	NO
13	Water management (Separating clean and dirty water, managing polluted water and managing the impact on groundwater)	-	NO
14	2 to 3 years of maintenance and aftercare	YES	-

### Unit rates for closure components

According to Table B.6 master rates and multiplication factors for applicable closure components. The master rates from the DMPR Master Rates table for financial provision of 2025 + CPI of 3% were used.

Component No.	Main description	Master rate	Multiplication factor
1	Dismantling of processing plant and related structures (including overland conveyors and power lines)	-	-
2(A)	Demolition of steel buildings and structures	-	-
2(B)	Demolition of reinforced concrete buildings and structures	-	-
3	Rehabilitation of access roads	-	-
4(A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of electrified railway lines	-	-
4(B)	Demolition and rehabilitation of non-electrified railway lines	-	-
5	Demolition of housing and facilities	-	-
6	Opencast rehabilitation including final voids and ramps	362 012	0.04
7	Sealing of shafts, adits and inclines	-	-
8(A)	Rehabilitation of overburden and spoils	225732	1.00
8(B)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (basic, salt-producing)	-	-
8(C)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (acidic, metal-rich)	-	-
9	Rehabilitation of subsided areas	-	-
10	General surface rehabilitation, including grassing of all denuded areas	198 065	1.00
11	River diversions	-	-
12	Fencing	-	-
13	Water management (Separating clean and dirty water, managing polluted water and managing the impact on groundwater)	-	-
14	2 to 3 years of maintenance and aftercare	24 002	1.00

### Determine weighting factors

According to Tables B.7 and B.8

Weighting factor 1: Nature of terrain/accessibility	1.1 (Undulating)
Weighting factor 2: Proximity to urban area where goods and services are to be supplied	1.05

### Calculation of closure costs

Table B.10 Template for Level 2: "Rules-based" assessment of the quantum for financial provision

Table 28: Calculation of closure cost

<b>CALCULATION OF THE QUANTUM</b>							
<b>Mine:</b>	Boeteka Doleriet (Pty) Ltd			<b>Location:</b>	Beaufort West		
<b>Evaluators:</b>	Z Norval			<b>Date:</b>	01 April 2026		
No	Description	Unit	A Quantity	B Master rate	C Multiplication factor	D Weighting factor 1	E=A *B*C*D Amount (Rand)
			Step 4.5	Step 4.3	Step 4.3	Step 4.4	
1	Dismantling of processing plant and related structures (including overland conveyors and power lines)	m <sup>2</sup>	0	24	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
2(A)	Demolition of steel buildings and structures	m <sup>2</sup>	0	324	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
2(B)	Demolition of reinforced concrete buildings and structures	m <sup>2</sup>	0	477	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
3	Rehabilitation of access roads	m <sup>2</sup>	0	59	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
4(A)	Demolition and rehabilitation of electrified railway lines	m	0	561	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
4(B)	Demolition and rehabilitations of non-electrified railway lines	m	0	307	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
5	Demolition of housing and/or administration facilities	m <sup>2</sup>	0	646	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
6	Opencast rehabilitation including final voids and ramps	ha	2	338598	0.04	1.1	R 29 796,58
7	Sealing of shaft, audits and inclines	m <sup>3</sup>	0	175	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
8(A)	Rehabilitation of overburden and spoils	ha	0.1	225732	1.00	1.1	R 24 830,51
8(B)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (basic, salt-producing waste)	ha	0	281144	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
8(C)	Rehabilitation of processing waste deposits and evaporation ponds (acidic, metal-rich waste)	ha	0	816576	0.51	1.1	R 0.00
9	Rehabilitation of subsided areas	ha	0	189017	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
10	General surface rehabilitation	ha	0.5	178817	1.00	1.1	R 98 349,56
11	River diversions	ha	0	178817	1.00	1.1	R 0.00

12	Fencing	m	0	204	1.00	1.1	R 0.00
13	Water Management	ha	0	67992	0.17	1.1	R 0.00
14	2 to 3 years of maintenance and aftercare	ha	1	23798	1.00	1.1	R 26 177,46
15(A)	Specialists study	Sum	0				R 0.00
15(B)	Specialists study	Sum	0				R 0.00
Sum of items 1 to 15 above							R 179 154,12
Multiply Sum of 1-15 by Weighting factor 2 (Step 4.4)		1.05		R8 957,71		<b>Sub Total 1</b>	R 188 111,83

1	Preliminary and General	6% of Subtotal 1 if Subtotal 1 <R100 000 000.00					R 11 286,71
		12% of Subtotal 1 if Subtotal 1 >R100 000 000.00					-
2	Contingency	10.0% of Subtotal 1					R 18 811,18
<b>Sub Total 2</b>							
(Subtotal 1 plus management and contingency)						R 218 209,72	
Vat (15%)						R 32 731,46	
GRAND TOTAL							
(Subtotal 3 plus VAT)						<b>R 250 941,18</b>	

The amount that will be necessary for the rehabilitation of damages caused by the operation, both sudden closures during the normal operation of the project and at final, planned closure gives a sum total of **R 250 941,18**

**(f) Confirm that the financial provision will be provided as determined.**

Herewith I, the person, whose name is stated below confirm that I am the person authorised to act as representative of the Applicant in terms of the resolution submitted with the application. I herewith confirm that the company will provide the amount that will be determined by the Regional Manager in accordance with the prescribed guidelines.

**Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the environmental management programme and reporting thereon, including**

**g) Monitoring of Impact Management Actions**

**h) Monitoring and reporting frequency**

**i) Responsible persons**

**j) Time period for implementing impact management actions**

**k) Mechanisms for monitoring compliance**

*Table 29: Mechanisms for monitoring compliance with and performance assessment against the EMPR and reporting thereon.*

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Demarcation of site with visible beacons</li> </ul>	<p>Maintenance of beacons</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Visible beacons need to be placed at the corners of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure beacons are in place throughout the life of the mine.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Visual Characteristics:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Visual intrusion as a result of site establishment.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Minimize the visual impact of the activity on the surrounding environment through proper site management and implementing good housekeeping practices.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>● Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Contain mining to the boundaries of the permitted area.</li> <li>■ Ensure that the site have a neat appearance and is kept in good condition at all times.</li> <li>■ Limit vegetation removal, and only strip topsoil immediately prior to the use of a specific area.</li> <li>■ Rehabilitate and level the site upon closure to ensure that the visual impact on the aesthetic value of the area is kept to a minimum.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Geology and Soil:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Loss of topsoil and fertility during mining and stockpiling</li> <li>■ Loss of stockpiled material due to ineffective storm water control.</li> <li>■ Erosion of returned topsoil after rehabilitation .</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Earthmoving equipment to reinstate mined-out areas.</li> <li>■ Cover crop to be established on reinstated areas.</li> <li>■ Erosion control infrastructure (if necessary)</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Strip and stockpile the upper 300 mm of the soil.</li> <li>■ Carefully manage and conserve the topsoil throughout the stockpiling and rehabilitation process.</li> <li>■ Ensure topsoil stripping, stockpiling and re-spreading is done in a systematic way. Plan mining in such a way that topsoil is stockpiled for the minimum possible time.</li> <li>■ Place topsoil heaps on a levelled area within the mining footprint area. Do not stockpile topsoil in undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Protect topsoil stockpiles against losses by water and wind erosion. Position stockpiles so as not to be vulnerable to erosion by wind and water. Establishment of plants on the stockpiles will help prevent erosion.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that topsoil heaps do not exceed 1.5 m in order to preserve micro-organisms within the topsoil, which can be lost due to compaction and lack of oxygen.</li> <li>■ Keep temporary stockpiles free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Divert storm- and runoff water around the mining area to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Spread the topsoil evenly over the rehabilitated area, to a depth of 300 mm, upon closure of the site.</li> <li>■ Strive to re-instate topsoil at a time of the year when vegetation cover can be established as quickly as possible afterwards, to that erosion of returned topsoil is minimized. The best time of year is at the end of the rainy season.</li> <li>■ Plant and irrigate a cover crop immediately after spreading topsoil to stabilise the soil and protect it from erosion. Fertilise the cover crop for optimum biomass production. Rehabilitation extends until the first cover crop is well established.</li> <li>■ Monitor the rehabilitated area for erosion, and appropriately stabilize if erosion do occur, for at least 12 months after reinstatement.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Groundcover:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Infestation of the topsoil heaps and mining area with invader plant species.</li> <li>■ Infestateion of denuded areas with</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Designated team to cut or pull out invasive plant species that germinated on site.</li> <li>■ Herbicide application equipment.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
	<p>invader plant species.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Infestation of the reinstated area with invader plant species.</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Implement an invasive plant species management plan to control all invasive plant species on site in terms of NEM:BA, 2004 and CARA, 1983.</li> <li>■ Keep all stockpiles (topsoil) free of invasive plant species.</li> <li>■ Control declared invader or exotic species on the rehabilitated areas.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel .</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Fauna:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on fauna within the footprint area.</li> <li>■ Disturbance to fauna within the footprint area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Toolbox talks to educate employees how to handle fauna that enter the work areas.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure no fauna is caught, killed, harmed, sold or played with.</li> <li>■ Instruct workers to report any animals that may be trapped in the working area.</li> <li>■ Ensure no snares are set or nests raided for eggs or young.</li> <li>■</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, and operational phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Air Quality:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dust nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Dust suppression equipment such as a water car.</li> <li>■ Signage that clearly reduce the speed on the access roads.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Control the liberation of dust into the surrounding environment by the use of; inter alia, straw, water spraying and/or environmentally friendly dust-</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<p>allaying agents that contains no PCB's (e.g. DAS products).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure continuous assessment of all dust suppression equipment to confirm its effectiveness in addressing dust suppression.</li> <li>■ Limit speed on the haul roads to 40 km/h to prevent the generation of excess dust.</li> <li>■ Minimise areas devoid of vegetation.</li> <li>■ Flatten and cover loads to prevent spillage and windblown dust during transportation.</li> <li>■ Take weather conditions into consideration upon commencement of daily operations. Limit operations during very windy periods to reduce airborne dust and resulting impacts.</li> <li>■ Ensure dust generating activities comply with the National Dust Control Regulations, GN No R827 promulgated in terms of NEM:AQA, 2004 and ASTM D1739 (SANS 1137:2012).</li> <li>■ Implement best practice measures during the stripping of topsoil, loading, and transporting of material from site to minimize potential dust impacts.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><b>Noise Ambiance:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance generated by earthmoving machinery</li> <li>■ Noise nuisance as a result of the</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Silencers fitted to all project related vehicles, and the use of vehicles that are in road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that employees and staff conduct themselves in an acceptable manner while on site.</li> <li>■ No loud music may be permitted at the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
	decommissioning activities.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that all project related vehicles are equipped with silencers and maintained in a road worthy condition in terms of the National Road Traffic Act, 1996.</li> <li>■ Implement best practice measures to minimise potential noise impacts.</li> <li>■ Contract a qualified occupational hygienist to quarterly monitor and report on the personal noise exposure of the employees working at the mine. Monitoring must be in accordance with SANS 10083:2004 (Edition 5) sampling method as well as NEM:AQA 2004, SANS 10103:2008.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel .</li> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Waste Management:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Soil contamination from hydrocarbon spills.</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with littering and hydrocarbon spills.</li> <li>■ Potential impact associated with litter left at the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Oil spill kit.</li> <li>■ Sealed drip trays.</li> <li>■ Formal waste disposal system with waste registers.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure regular vehicle maintenance, repairs and services take place in a demarcated service area of the permit holder. If emergency repairs are needed on equipment not able to move to the workshop / service area, drip trays must be present. All waste products must be disposed of in a 200 litre closed container/bin to be removed from the emergency service area to the workshop in order to ensure proper disposal.</li> <li>■ Provide ablution facilities in the form of a chemical toilet that is placed outside the 1:100 year flood line of any open water resource. Ensure the toilet is serviced at least once every two weeks for the duration of the mining activities.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that the use of any temporary, chemical toilet facilities does not cause any pollution to water sources or pose a health hazard. In addition, ensure that no form of secondary pollution arise from the disposal of refuse or sewage from the temporary, chemical toilets. Address any pollution problems arising from the above immediately.</li> <li>■ Equip the diesel bowser with a drip tray if used on site. The nozzle of the bowser must rest in a sleeve to prevent dripping after refuelling.</li> <li>■ Clean drip trays after use. Do not use dirty drip trays.</li> <li>■ Keep a spill kit on site.</li> <li>■ Collect any effluents containing oil, grease or other industrial substances in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility.</li> <li>■ Collect the contaminated soil from spillage that occurred, such as oil or diesel leaking from a burst pipe, within the first hour of occurrence, in a suitable receptacle and removed from the site, either for resale or for appropriate disposal at a recognized facility. File proof.</li> <li>■ Compile a waste management plan and implement it on site. The plan must focus on the waste hierarchy of the NEM:WA.</li> <li>■ Contain general waste in marked, sealable, refuse bins placed at a designated area and remove waste from the mining area to a recognised general waste landfill site.</li> <li>■ Prevent the burning or burying of waste on site.</li> <li>■ Report any significant spillage of chemicals, fuels etc. during the lifespan of the mining activities to the Department of Water and Sanitation and other relevant authorities.</li> <li>■ Park the machinery at the mining area with drip trays placed underneath stationary vehicles.</li> </ul>	

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Mining of aggregate (dolerite) / gravel .</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential impact on archaeological artefacts.</li> <li>■ Potential impact on areas of palaeontological concerns</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Contact number of an archaeologist that can be contacted when a discovery is made on site.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Confine all mining to the development footprint area.</li> <li>■ Implement the following chance find procedure when discoveries are made on site: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ If during the pre-construction phase, construction, operations or closure phases of this project, any person employed by the developer, one of its subsidiaries, contractors and subcontractors, or service provider, finds any artefact of cultural significance or heritage site, this person must cease work at the site of the find and report this find to their immediate supervisor, and through their supervisor to the senior on-site manager.</li> <li>▪ It is the responsibility of the senior on-site Manager to make an initial assessment of the extent of the find, and confirm the extent of the work stoppage in that area.</li> <li>▪ The senior on-site Manager must inform the ECO of the chance find and its immediate impact on operations. The ECO Chance Find Protocol are as follows: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Once alerted to fossil occurrence(s): alert site foreman, stop work in area immediately (N.B. safety first!), safeguard site with security tape / fence / sand bags if necessary.</li> <li>2. Record key data while fossil remains are still in situ:</li> </ol> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Accurate geographic location – describe and mark on site map / 1: 50 000 map / satellite image / aerial photo</li> <li>▪ Context – describe position of fossils within stratigraphy (rock layering), depth below surface</li> <li>▪ Photograph fossil(s) in situ with scale, from different angles, including images showing context (e.g. rock layering)</li> </ul> <p>3. If feasible to leave fossils in situ:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> <li>▪ Ensure fossil site remains safeguarded until clearance is given by the Heritage Resources Agency for work to resume</li> </ul> <p>4. If not feasible to leave fossils in situ (emergency procedure only):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carefully remove fossils, as far as possible still enclosed within the original sedimentary matrix (e.g. entire block of fossiliferous rock)</li> <li>▪ Photograph fossils against a plain, level background, with scale</li> <li>▪ Carefully wrap fossils in several layers of newspaper / tissue paper / plastic bags</li> <li>▪ Safeguard fossils together with locality and collection data (including collector and date) in a box in a safe place for examination by a palaeontologist</li> <li>▪ Alert Heritage Resources Agency and project palaeontologist (if any) who will advise on any necessary mitigation</li> </ul> <p>5. If required by Heritage Resources Agency, ensure that a suitably-qualified specialist palaeontologist is appointed as soon as possible by the developer.</p>	

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
			<p>6. Implement any further mitigation measures proposed by the palaeontologist and Heritage Resources Agency.</p> <p>7. Specialist palaeontologist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Record, describe and judiciously sample fossil remains together with relevant contextual data (stratigraphy / sedimentology / taphonomy). Ensure that fossils are curated in an approved repository (e.g. museum / university / Council for Geoscience collection) together with full collection data. Submit Palaeontological Mitigation report to Heritage Resources Agency. Adhere to best international practice for palaeontological fieldwork and Heritage Work may only continue once the go-ahead was issued by SAHRA.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel .</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Hydrology:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Storm water management</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Storm water management structures such as berms to direct storm- and runoff water around the stockpiled topsoil area (when needed).</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Divert storm water around the topsoil heaps to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Conduct activity in terms of the Best Practice Guidelines for small-scale mining as developed by DWS.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout site establishment-, operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Screening, stockpile, and transporting material from site.</li> </ul>	<p><b><u>Existing Infrastructure:</u></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Deterioration of the access road to the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Grader to restore the road surface when needed.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout operational phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

SOURCE ACTIVITY	IMPACTS REQUIRING MONITORING PROGRAMMES	FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR MONITORING	ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES (FOR THE EXECUTION OF THE MONITORING PROGRAMMES)	MONITORING AND REPORTING FREQUENCY AND TIME PERIODS FOR IMPLEMENTING IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Overloading of trucks having an impact on the public roads.</li> </ul>		<p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Divert storm water around the access road to prevent erosion.</li> <li>■ Restrict vehicular movement to the existing access road to prevent crisscrossing of tracks through undisturbed areas.</li> <li>■ Repair rutting and erosion of the access road caused as a direct result of the mining activities.</li> <li>■ Prevent the overloading of the truck, and file proof of load weights for auditing purposes.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site establishment.</li> <li>■ Mining of aggregate / gravel .</li> <li>■ Crushing, screening, stockpiling and transporting material from site.</li> <li>■ Sloping and landscaping upon closure of the mining area.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Potential health and safety risks to employees.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Stocked first aid box.</li> <li>■ Level 1 certified first aider.</li> <li>■ All appointments in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996.</li> </ul>	<p><u>Role:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager to ensure day-to-day compliance with the guidelines as stipulated in the EMPR.</li> <li>■ Compliance to be monitored by the independent Environmental Control Officer during the annual environmental audit.</li> </ul> <p><u>Responsibility:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure adequate ablution facilities and water for human consumption is daily available on site.</li> <li>■ Ensure that workers have access to the correct PPE as required by law.</li> <li>■ Manage all operations in compliance with the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act No 29 of 1996).</li> </ul>	<p>Applicable throughout operational-, and decommissioning phases.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Daily compliance monitoring by site management.</li> <li>■ Annual compliance monitoring of site by an Environmental Control Officer.</li> </ul>

**l) Indicate the frequency of the submission of the performance assessment/environmental audit report.**

The Environmental Audit Report in accordance with Appendix 7 as prescribed in Regulation 34 of the EIA Regulations, 2014 (as amended) will annually be submitted to DMPR for compliance monitoring purposes or in accordance with the time period stipulated by the Environmental Authorisation.

**m) Environmental Awareness Plan**

**i) Manner in which the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work.**

Once the Applicant received the mining permit and may commence with the proposed activity, a copy of the Environmental Management Programme will be handed to the site manager for his perusal. Issues such as the mining boundaries, fire principals and waste handling will be discussed.

An induction meeting will be held with all the site workers to inform them of the Basic Rules of Conduct with regard to the environment.

**ii) Manner in which risk will be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment.**

The operations manager must ensure that he/she understands the EMPR document and its requirement and commitments before any mining takes place. An Environmental Control Officer needs to check compliance of the mining activity to the management programmes described in the EMPR.

The following list represents the basic steps towards environmental awareness, which all participants in this project must consider whilst carrying out their tasks.

**Site Management:**

- Stay within boundaries of site – do not enter adjacent properties.
- Keep tools and material properly stored.
- Smoke only in designated areas.
- Use toilets provided – report full or leaking toilets.

🚩 **Water Management and Erosion:**

- Check that rainwater flows around work areas and are not contaminated.
- Report any erosion.
- Check that dirty water is kept from clean water.

🚩 **Waste Management:**

- Take care of your own waste
- Keep waste separate into labelled containers – report full bins.
- Place waste in containers and always close lid.
- Don't burn waste.
- Pick-up any litter laying around.

🚩 **Hazardous Waste Management (Petrol, Oil, Diesel, Grease)**

- Never mix general waste with hazardous waste.
- Use only sealed, non-leaking containers.
- Keep all containers closed and store only in approved areas.
- Always put drip trays under vehicles and machinery.
- Empty drip trays after rain.
- Stop leaks and spills, if safe:
  - ✓ Keep spilled liquids moving away.
  - ✓ Immediately report the spill to the site manager/supervision.
  - ✓ Locate spill kit/supplies and use to clean-up, if safe.
  - ✓ Place spill clean-up wastes in proper containers.
  - ✓ Label containers and move to approved storage area.

🚩 **Discoveries:**

- Stop work immediately.
- Notify site manager/supervisor.
- Includes – archaeological finds, cultural artefacts, contaminated water, pipes, containers, tanks and drums, any buried structures.

🚩 **Air Quality:**

- Wear protection when working in very dusty areas.
- Implement dust control measures:
  - ✓ Water all roads and work areas.

- ✓ Minimize handling of material.
- ✓ Obey speed limit and cover trucks.

🚩 **Driving and Noise:**

- Use only approved access roads.
- Respect speed limits.
- Only use turn-around areas – no crisscrossing through undisturbed areas.
- Avoid unnecessary loud noises.
- Report or repair noisy vehicles.

🚩 **Vegetation and Animal life:**

- Do not remove any plants or trees without approval of the site manager.
- Do not collect fire wood.
- Do not catch, kill, harm, sell or play with any animal, reptile, bird or amphibian on site.
- Report any animal trapped in the work area.
- Do not set snares or raid nests for eggs or young.

🚩 **Fire Management:**

- Do not light any fires on site, unless contained in a drum at demarcated area.
- Put cigarette butts in a rubbish bin.
- Do not smoke near gas, paints or petrol.
- Know the position of firefighting equipment.
- Report all fires.
- Don't burn waste or vegetation.

**n) Specific information required by the Competent Authority**

(Among others, confirm that the financial provision will be reviewed annually)

The Applicant undertakes to annually review and update the financial provision calculation, upon which it will be submitted to DMPR for review and approved as being sufficient to cover the environmental liability at the time and for closure of the mine at that time.

## 2. UNDERTAKING

The EAP herewith confirms

I, Zoë Norval (the EAP), herewith confirms

- a) the correctness of the information provided in the reports
- b) the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&AP's
- c) the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant,   
and
- d) that the information provided by the EAP to interested and affected parties and any response by the EAP to comments or inputs made by interested and affected parties are correctly reflected herein



---

Signature of the environmental assessment practitioner:

Greenmined Environmental (Pty) Ltd

---

Name of Company:

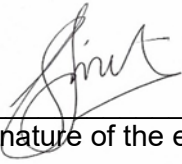
10 April 2026

---

Date:

I, Sonette Smit (Reviewer), herewith confirms

- e) the correctness of the information provided in the reports
- f) the inclusion of comments and inputs from stakeholders and I&AP's
- g) the inclusion of inputs and recommendations from the specialist reports where relevant,   
and
- h) that the information provided by the EAP to interested and affected parties and any response by the EAP to comments or inputs made by interested and affected parties are correctly reflected herein



---

Signature of the environmental assessment practitioner:

Greenmined Environmental (Pty) Ltd

---

Name of Company:

10 April 2026

---

Date:

**-END-**